

Developing Language Processing Components with GATE (a User Guide)

For GATE version 3 beta 1 (July 2004)

Hamish Cunningham
Diana Maynard
Kalina Bontcheva
Valentin Tablan
Cristian Ursu
Marin Dimitrov
Mike Dowman
Niraj Aswani

©The University of Sheffield 2001-2004

<http://gate.ac.uk/>

HTML version: <http://gate.ac.uk/sale/tao/>

Work on GATE has been partly supported by EPSRC grants GR/K25267 (Large-Scale Information Extraction), GR/M31699 (GATE 2), RA007940 (EMILLE), GR/N15764/01 (AKT) and GR/R85150/01 (MIAKT), AHRB grant APN16396 (ETCSL/GATE), and several EU-funded projects (SEKT, KnowledgeWeb, PrestoSpace, h-TechSight, ENIRAF).

Brief Contents

1	Introduction	2
1.1	How to Use This Text	3
1.2	Context	4
1.3	Overview	5
1.4	Structure of the Book	9
1.5	Further Reading	10
2	Changes Log	14
2.1	Version 3 Beta 1 (August 2004)	14
2.2	July 2004	15
2.3	June 2004	15
2.4	April 2004	16
2.5	March 2004	16
2.6	Version 2.2 – August 2003	17
2.7	Version 2.1 – February 2003	17
2.8	June 2002	17
3	How To . . .	19
3.1	Download GATE	19
3.2	Install and Run GATE	19
3.3	Troubleshooting	21
3.4	[D] Get Started with the GUI	21
3.5	[D,F] Configure GATE	23
3.6	Build GATE	24
3.7	[D,F] Create a New CREOLE Resource	25
3.8	[F] Instantiate CREOLE Resources	29
3.9	[D] Load CREOLE Resources	32
3.10	[D,F] Configure CREOLE Resources	33
3.11	[D] Create and Run an Application	36
3.12	[D] Run PRs Conditionally on Document Features	36
3.13	[D] View Annotations	37
3.14	[D] Do Information Extraction with ANNIE	38
3.15	[D] Modify ANNIE	38
3.16	[D] Create and Edit Test Data	39
3.17	[D,F] Create a New Annotation Schema	39
3.18	[D] Save and Restore LR in Data Stores	41
3.19	[D] Save Resource Parameter State to File	42
3.20	[D,F] Perform Evaluation with the AnnotationDiff tool	42
3.21	[D] Use the Corpus Benchmark Evaluation tool	46
3.22	[D] Write JAPE Grammars	48
3.23	[F] Embed NLE in other Applications	48
3.24	[D,F] Add support for a new document format	49

3.25	[D] Dump Results to File	51
3.26	[D] Stop GUI ‘Freezing’ on Linux	52
3.27	[D] Stop GUI Crashing on Linux	52
3.28	[D] Stop GATE Restoring GUI Sessions/Options	52
3.29	Work with Unicode	52
3.30	Work with Oracle and PostgreSQL	54
4	CREOLE: the GATE Component Model	55
4.1	The Web and CREOLE	56
4.2	Java Beans: a Simple Component Architecture	57
4.3	The GATE Framework	58
4.4	Language Resources and Processing Resources	59
4.5	The Lifecycle of a CREOLE Resource	60
4.6	Processing Resources and Applications	61
4.7	Language Resources and Datastores	61
4.8	Built-in CREOLE Resources	62
5	Visual CREOLE	63
5.1	Gazetteer Visual Resource - GAZE	63
5.2	Ontogazetteer	65
5.3	Protégé in GATE	67
5.4	The Co-reference Editor	69
6	Language Resources: Corpora, Documents and Annotations	71
6.1	Features: Simple Attribute/Value Data	71
6.2	Corpora: Sets of Documents plus Features	72
6.3	Documents: Content plus Annotations plus Features	72
6.4	Annotations: Directed Acyclic Graphs	72
6.5	Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool	77
6.6	Document Formats	77
6.7	XML Input/Output	90
7	JAPE: Regular Expressions Over Annotations	92
7.1	Use of Context	96
7.2	Use of Priority	97
7.3	Useful tricks	99
7.4	Ontology aware grammar transduction	101
7.5	Using Java code in JAPE rules	102
7.6	Optimising for speed	104
7.7	The JAPE Debugger	104
8	ANNIE: a Nearly-New Information Extraction System	110
8.1	Tokeniser	111
8.2	Gazetteer	114
8.3	Sentence Splitter	115

8.4	Part of Speech Tagger	115
8.5	Semantic Tagger	115
8.6	Orthographic Coreference (OrthoMatcher)	115
8.7	Pronominal Coreference	116
8.8	A Walk-Through Example	122
9	(More CREOLE) Plugins	125
9.1	Document Reset	126
9.2	Verb Group Chunker	126
9.3	OntoText Gazetteer	126
9.4	Flexible Gazetteer	128
9.5	Flexible Exporter	129
9.6	DAML+OIL Exporter	130
9.7	Annotation Set Transfer	136
9.8	Information Retrieval in GATE	137
9.9	WordNet in GATE	143
9.10	Machine Learning in GATE	147
9.11	MIAKT NLG Lexicon and Tools	153
10	Working with Ontologies: LRs and VRs	157
10.1	Overview of GATE's Ontology API	157
10.2	Ontology-Aware JAPE Transducer	158
10.3	Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool	158
11	Performance Evaluation of Language Analysers	164
11.1	The AnnotationDiff Tool	164
11.2	The six annotation relations explained	166
11.3	Benchmarking tool	166
11.4	Metrics for Evaluation in Information Extraction	167
12	Users, Groups, and LR Access Rights	170
12.1	Java serialisation and LR access rights	171
12.2	Oracle Datastore and LR access rights	171
	Appendices	178
A	Design Notes	178
A.1	Patterns	178
A.2	Exception Handling	181
B	JAPE: Implementation	184
B.1	Formal Description of the JAPE Grammar	185
B.2	Relation to CPSL	187
B.3	Algorithms for JAPE Rule Application	188
B.4	Label Binding Scheme	194

B.5	Classes	194
B.6	Implementation	195
B.7	Compilation	198
C	Named-Entity State Machine Patterns	199
C.1	Main.jape	199
C.2	first.jape	200
C.3	firstname.jape	201
C.4	name.jape	201
C.5	name_post.jape	202
C.6	date_pre.jape	203
C.7	date.jape	203
C.8	reldate.jape	203
C.9	number.jape	203
C.10	address.jape	204
C.11	url.jape	204
C.12	identifier.jape	204
C.13	jobtitle.jape	204
C.14	final.jape	204
C.15	unknown.jape	205
C.16	name_context.jape	205
C.17	org_context.jape	205
C.18	loc_context.jape	206
C.19	clean.jape	206
D	Part-of-Speech Tags used in the Hepple Tagger	207
E	Sample ML Configuration File	209
	References	219

Contents

1	Introduction	2
1.1	How to Use This Text	3
1.2	Context	4
1.3	Overview	5
1.3.1	Developing and Deploying Language Processing Facilities	5
1.3.2	Built-in Components	7
1.3.3	Additional Facilities	7
1.3.4	An Example	8
1.4	Structure of the Book	9
1.5	Further Reading	10
2	Changes Log	14
2.1	Version 3 Beta 1 (August 2004)	14
2.2	July 2004	15
2.3	June 2004	15
2.4	April 2004	16
2.5	March 2004	16
2.6	Version 2.2 – August 2003	17
2.7	Version 2.1 – February 2003	17
2.8	June 2002	17
3	How To . . .	19
3.1	Download GATE	19
3.2	Install and Run GATE	19
3.2.1	The Easy Way	20
3.2.2	The Hard Way	20
3.3	Troubleshooting	21
3.4	[D] Get Started with the GUI	21
3.5	[D,F] Configure GATE	23
3.5.1	[F] Save Config Data to gate.xml	24
3.6	Build GATE	24
3.7	[D,F] Create a New CREOLE Resource	25
3.8	[F] Instantiate CREOLE Resources	29
3.9	[D] Load CREOLE Resources	32

3.9.1	Loading Language Resources	32
3.9.2	Loading Processing Resources	32
3.9.3	Loading and Processing Large Corpora	33
3.10	[D,F] Configure CREOLE Resources	33
3.11	[D] Create and Run an Application	36
3.12	[D] Run PRs Conditionally on Document Features	36
3.13	[D] View Annotations	37
3.14	[D] Do Information Extraction with ANNIE	38
3.15	[D] Modify ANNIE	38
3.16	[D] Create and Edit Test Data	39
3.16.1	Saving the test data	39
3.17	[D,F] Create a New Annotation Schema	39
3.18	[D] Save and Restore LRs in Data Stores	41
3.19	[D] Save Resource Parameter State to File	42
3.20	[D,F] Perform Evaluation with the AnnotationDiff tool	42
3.20.1	GUI	42
3.20.2	API	44
3.20.3	Annotation Diff parameters	44
3.20.4	Reading the results from the Annotation Diff	45
3.21	[D] Use the Corpus Benchmark Evaluation tool	46
3.21.1	GUI mode	46
3.21.2	Standalone mode	47
3.21.3	How to define the properties of the benchmark tool	47
3.22	[D] Write JAPE Grammars	48
3.23	[F] Embed NLE in other Applications	48
3.24	[D,F] Add support for a new document format	49
3.25	[D] Dump Results to File	51
3.26	[D] Stop GUI ‘Freezing’ on Linux	52
3.27	[D] Stop GUI Crashing on Linux	52
3.28	[D] Stop GATE Restoring GUI Sessions/Options	52
3.29	Work with Unicode	52
3.30	Work with Oracle and PostgreSQL	54
4	CREOLE: the GATE Component Model	55
4.1	The Web and CREOLE	56
4.2	Java Beans: a Simple Component Architecture	57
4.3	The GATE Framework	58
4.4	Language Resources and Processing Resources	59
4.5	The Lifecycle of a CREOLE Resource	60
4.6	Processing Resources and Applications	61
4.7	Language Resources and Datastores	61
4.8	Built-in CREOLE Resources	62
5	Visual CREOLE	63

5.1	Gazetteer Visual Resource - GAZE	63
5.1.1	Running Modes	64
5.1.2	Loading a Gazetteer	64
5.1.3	Linear Definition Pane	64
5.1.4	Linear Definition Toolbar	64
5.1.5	Operations on Linear Definition Nodes	65
5.1.6	Gazetteer List Pane	65
5.1.7	Mapping Definition Pane	65
5.2	Ontogazetteer	65
5.2.1	Gazetteer Lists Editor and Mapper	66
5.2.2	Ontogazetteer Editor	66
5.3	Protégé in GATE	67
5.3.1	Opening Protégé projects and creating new ones	67
5.3.2	How to Import RDF files in Protégé project	67
5.3.3	How to Save a Protégé project as RDF files	67
5.3.4	How to Set the Protégé plugin directory parameter in GATE	68
5.3.5	How to save a Protégé ontology in Ontotext ontology file format	68
5.3.6	Known problems and bugs	68
5.4	The Co-reference Editor	69
6	Language Resources: Corpora, Documents and Annotations	71
6.1	Features: Simple Attribute/Value Data	71
6.2	Corpora: Sets of Documents plus Features	72
6.3	Documents: Content plus Annotations plus Features	72
6.4	Annotations: Directed Acyclic Graphs	72
6.4.1	Annotation Schemas	72
6.4.2	Examples of Annotated Documents	74
6.4.3	Viewing and Editing Diverse Annotation Types	76
6.5	Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool	77
6.6	Document Formats	77
6.6.1	Detecting the right reader	78
6.6.2	XML	80
6.6.3	HTML	86
6.6.4	SGML	87
6.6.5	Plain text	88
6.6.6	RTF	88
6.6.7	Email	89
6.7	XML Input/Output	90
7	JAPE: Regular Expressions Over Annotations	92
7.1	Use of Context	96
7.2	Use of Priority	97
7.3	Useful tricks	99
7.4	Ontology aware grammar transduction	101

7.5	Using Java code in JAPE rules	102
7.5.1	Adding a feature to the document	103
7.6	Optimising for speed	104
7.7	The JAPE Debugger	104
7.7.1	Debugger GUI	105
7.7.2	Using the Debugger	106
7.7.3	Known Bugs	107
8	ANNIE: a Nearly-New Information Extraction System	110
8.1	Tokeniser	111
8.1.1	Tokeniser Rules	112
8.1.2	Token Types	112
8.1.3	English Tokeniser	113
8.2	Gazetteer	114
8.3	Sentence Splitter	115
8.4	Part of Speech Tagger	115
8.5	Semantic Tagger	115
8.6	Orthographic Coreference (OrthoMatcher)	115
8.6.1	GATE Interface	116
8.6.2	Resources	116
8.6.3	Processing	116
8.7	Pronominal Coreference	116
8.7.1	Quoted Speech Submodule	117
8.7.2	Pleonastic It submodule	118
8.7.3	Pronominal Resolution Submodule	118
8.7.4	Detailed description of the algorithm	118
8.8	A Walk-Through Example	122
8.8.1	Step 1 - Tokenisation	123
8.8.2	Step 2 - List Lookup	123
8.8.3	Step 3 - Grammar Rules	124
9	(More CREOLE) Plugins	125
9.1	Document Reset	126
9.2	Verb Group Chunker	126
9.3	OntoText Gazetteer	126
9.3.1	Prerequisites	127
9.3.2	Setup	127
9.4	Flexible Gazetteer	128
9.5	Flexible Exporter	129
9.6	DAML+OIL Exporter	130
9.6.1	Introduction	130
9.6.2	Using the DAML+OIL Export	131
9.6.3	Exporting a corpus annotated with the OntoGazetteer	136
9.7	Annotation Set Transfer	136

9.8	Information Retrieval in GATE	137
9.8.1	Using the IR functionality in GATE	139
9.8.2	Using the IR API	141
9.9	WordNet in GATE	143
9.9.1	The WordNet API	146
9.10	Machine Learning in GATE	147
9.10.1	ML Generalities	147
9.10.2	The Machine Learning PR in GATE	148
9.10.3	The WEKA Wrapper	150
9.10.4	Training an ML model with the ML PR and WEKA wrapper	151
9.10.5	Applying a learnt model	151
9.10.6	The MAXENT Wrapper	152
9.11	MIAKT NLG Lexicon and Tools	153
9.11.1	Complexity and Generality	156
10	Working with Ontologies: LRs and VRs	157
10.1	Overview of GATE's Ontology API	157
10.2	Ontology-Aware JAPE Transducer	158
10.3	Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool	158
10.3.1	Viewing Annotated Texts	159
10.3.2	Editing Existing Annotations	160
10.3.3	Adding New Annotations	162
10.3.4	Options	162
11	Performance Evaluation of Language Analysers	164
11.1	The AnnotationDiff Tool	164
11.2	The six annotation relations explained	166
11.3	Benchmarking tool	166
11.4	Metrics for Evaluation in Information Extraction	167
12	Users, Groups, and LR Access Rights	170
12.1	Java serialisation and LR access rights	171
12.2	Oracle Datastore and LR access rights	171
12.2.1	Users, Groups, Sessions and Access Modes	171
12.2.2	User/Group Administration	172
12.2.3	The API	175
	Appendices	178
A	Design Notes	178
A.1	Patterns	178
A.1.1	Components	179
A.1.2	Model, view, controller	180
A.1.3	Interfaces	181
A.2	Exception Handling	181

B	JAPE: Implementation	184
B.1	Formal Description of the JAPE Grammar	185
B.2	Relation to CPSL	187
B.3	Algorithms for JAPE Rule Application	188
B.3.1	The first algorithm	188
B.3.2	Algorithm 2	192
B.4	Label Binding Scheme	194
B.5	Classes	194
B.6	Implementation	195
B.6.1	A Walk-Through	195
B.6.2	Example RHS code	196
B.7	Compilation	198
C	Named-Entity State Machine Patterns	199
C.1	Main.jape	199
C.2	first.jape	200
C.3	firstname.jape	201
C.4	name.jape	201
C.4.1	Person	201
C.4.2	Location	201
C.4.3	Organization	202
C.4.4	Ambiguities	202
C.4.5	Contextual information	202
C.5	name_post.jape	202
C.6	date_pre.jape	203
C.7	date.jape	203
C.8	reldate.jape	203
C.9	number.jape	203
C.10	address.jape	204
C.11	url.jape	204
C.12	identifier.jape	204
C.13	jobtitle.jape	204
C.14	final.jape	204
C.15	unknown.jape	205
C.16	name_context.jape	205
C.17	org_context.jape	205
C.18	loc_context.jape	206
C.19	clean.jape	206
D	Part-of-Speech Tags used in the Hepple Tagger	207
E	Sample ML Configuration File	209
	References	219

Chapter 1

Introduction

Software documentation is like sex: when it is good, it is very, very good; and when it is bad, it is better than nothing. (Anonymous.)

There are two ways of constructing a software design: one way is to make it so simple that there are obviously no deficiencies; the other way is to make it so complicated that there are no obvious deficiencies. (C.A.R. Hoare)

A computer language is not just a way of getting a computer to perform operations but rather that it is a novel formal medium for expressing ideas about methodology. Thus, programs must be written for people to read, and only incidentally for machines to execute. (The Structure and Interpretation of Computer Programs, H. Abelson, G. Sussman and J. Sussman, 1985.)

If you try to make something beautiful, it is often ugly. If you try to make something useful, it is often beautiful. (Oscar Wilde)¹

GATE is an infrastructure for developing and deploying software components that process human language. GATE helps scientists and developers in three ways:

1. by specifying an **architecture**, or organisational structure, for language processing software;
2. by providing a **framework**, or class library, that implements the architecture and can be used to embed language processing capabilities in diverse applications;
3. by providing a **development environment** built on top of the framework made up of convenient graphical tools for developing components.

The architecture exploits component-based software development, object orientation and mobile code. The framework and development environment are written in Java and

¹These were, at least, our ideals; of course we didn't completely live up to them. . .

available as open-source free software under the GNU library licence². GATE uses Unicode [Unicode Consortium 96] throughout, and has been tested on a variety of Slavic, Germanic, Romance, and Indic languages [Maynard *et al.* 01, Gambäck & Olsson 00, McEnery *et al.* 00].

From a scientific point-of-view, GATE's contribution is to quantitative measurement of accuracy and repeatability of results for verification purposes.

GATE has been in development at the University of Sheffield since 1995 and has been used in a wide variety of research and development projects [Maynard *et al.* 00]. Version 1 of GATE was released in 1996, was licensed by several hundred organisations, and used in a wide range of language analysis contexts including Information Extraction ([Cunningham 99b, Appelt 99, Gaizauskas & Wilks 98, Cowie & Lehnert 96]) in English, Greek, Spanish, Swedish, German, Italian and French. Version 2 of the system, a complete re-implementation and extension of the original, is available from <http://gate.ac.uk/download/>.

This book describes how to use GATE to develop language processing components, test their performance and deploy them as parts of other applications. In the rest of this chapter:

- section 1.1 describes the best way to use this book;
- section 1.2 briefly notes that the context of GATE is applied language processing, or *Language Engineering*;
- section 1.3 gives an overview of developing using GATE;
- section 1.4 describes the structure of the rest of the book;
- section 1.5 lists other publications about GATE.

Note: if you don't see the component you need in this document, or if we mention a component that you can't see in the software, contact gate@dcs.shef.ac.uk – various components are developed by our collaborators, who we will be happy to put you in contact with. (Often the process of getting a new component is as simple as typing the URL into GATE; the system will do the rest.)

1.1 How to Use This Text

It is a good idea to read all of this introduction (you can skip sections 1.2 and 1.5 if pressed); then you can either continue wading through the whole thing or just use chapter 3 as a reference and dip into other chapters for more detail as necessary. Chapter 3 gives instructions for completing common tasks with GATE, organised in a FAQ style: details, and the

²This is a restricted form of the GNU licence, which means that GATE can be embedded in commercial products if required.

reasoning behind the various aspects of the system, are omitted in this chapter, so where more information is needed refer to later chapters.

The structure of the book as a whole is detailed in section 1.4 below.

1.2 Context

GATE can be thought of as a **Software Architecture for Language Engineering** [Cunningham 00].

‘Software Architecture’ is used rather loosely here to mean computer infrastructure for software development, including development environments and frameworks, as well as the more usual use of the term to denote a macro-level organisational structure for software systems [Shaw & Garlan 96].

Language Engineering (LE) may be defined as:

... the discipline or act of engineering software systems that perform tasks involving processing human language. Both the construction process and its outputs are measurable and predictable. The literature of the field relates to both application of relevant scientific results and a body of practice. [Cunningham 99a]

The relevant scientific results in this case are the outputs of Computational Linguistics, Natural Language Processing and Artificial Intelligence in general. Unlike these other disciplines, LE, as an engineering discipline, entails *predictability*, both of the process of constructing LE-based software and of the performance of that software after its completion and deployment in applications.

Some working definitions:

1. **Computational Linguistics (CL)**: science of language that uses computation as an investigative tool.
2. **Natural Language Processing (NLP)**: science of computation whose subject matter is data structures and algorithms for computer processing of human language.
3. **Language Engineering (LE)**: building NLP systems whose cost and outputs are measurable and predictable.
4. **Software Architecture**: macro-level organisational principles for families of systems. In this context is also used as **infrastructure**.
5. **Software Architecture for Language Engineering (SALE)**: software infrastructure, architecture and development tools for applied CL, NLP and LE.

(Of course the practice of these fields is broader and more complex than these definitions.)

In the scientific endeavours of NLP and CL, GATE's role is to support experimentation. In this context GATE's significant features include support for automated measurement (see section 11), providing a 'level playing field' where results can easily be repeated across different sites and environments, and reducing research overheads in various ways.

1.3 Overview

1.3.1 Developing and Deploying Language Processing Facilities

GATE as an architecture suggests that the elements of software systems that process natural language can usefully be broken down into various types of component, known as resources³. Components are reusable software chunks with well-defined interfaces, and are a popular architectural form, used in Sun's Java Beans and Microsoft's .Net, for example. GATE components are specialised types of Java Bean, and come in three flavours:

- LanguageResources (LRs) represent entities such as lexicons, corpora or ontologies;
- ProcessingResources (PRs) represent entities that are primarily algorithmic, such as parsers, generators or ngram modellers;
- VisualResources (VRs) represent visualisation and editing components that participate in GUIs.

These definitions can be blurred in practice as necessary.

Collectively, the set of resources integrated with GATE is known as **CREOLE**: a Collection of REusable Objects for Language Engineering. All the resources are packaged as Java Archive (or 'JAR') files, plus some XML configuration data. The JAR and XML files are made available to GATE by putting them on a web server, or simply placing them in the local file space. Section 1.3.2 introduces GATE's built-in resource set.

When using GATE to develop language processing functionality for an application, the developer uses the development environment and the framework to construct resources of the three types. This may involve programming, or the development of Language Resources such as grammars that are used by existing Processing Resources, or a mixture of both. The development environment is used for visualisation of the data structures produced and consumed during processing, and for debugging, performance measurement and so on. For example, figure 1.1 is a screenshot of one of the visualisation tools (displaying named-entity

³The terms 'resource' and 'component' are synonymous in this context. 'Resource' is used instead of just 'component' because it is a common term in the literature of the field: cf. the Language Resources and Evaluation conference series [LREC-1 98, LREC-2 00].

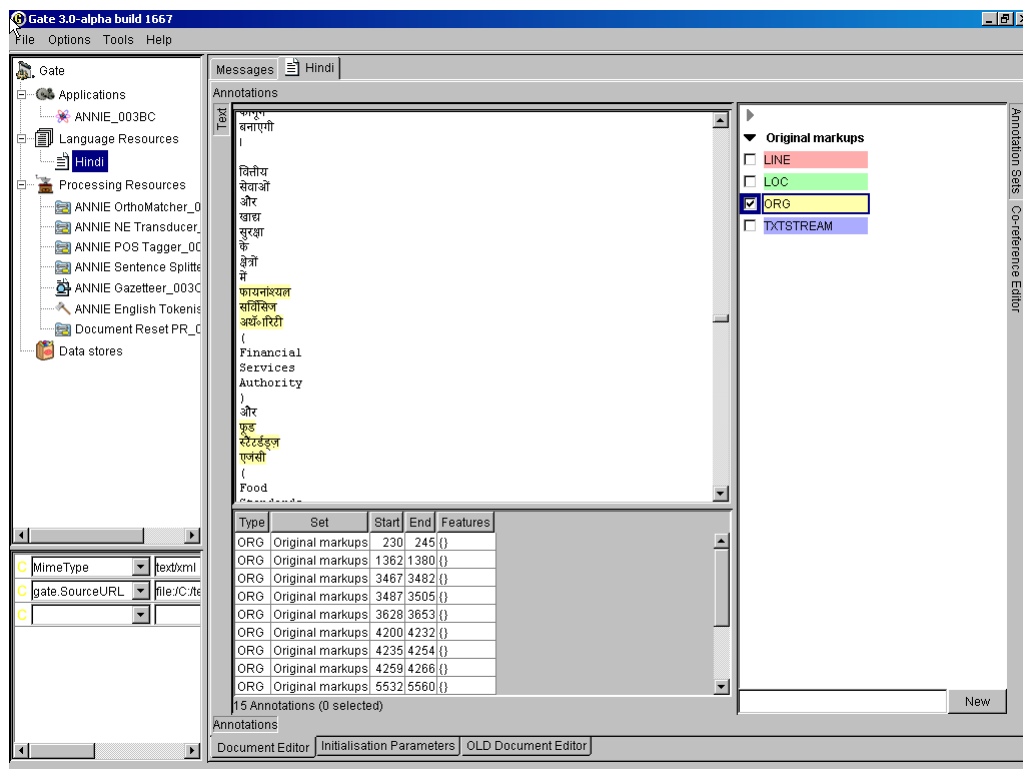


Figure 1.1: One of GATE’s visual resources

extraction results for a Bengali sentence).

The GATE development environment is analogous to systems like Mathematica for Mathematicians, or JBuilder for Java programmers: it provides a convenient graphical environment for research and development of language processing software.

When an appropriate set of resources have been developed, they can then be embedded in the target client application using the GATE framework. The framework is supplied as two JAR files.⁴ To embed GATE-based language processing facilities in an application, these JAR files are all that is needed, along with JAR files and XML configuration files for the various resources that make up the new facilities.

⁴The main JAR file (**gate.jar**) supplies the framework, built-in resources and various 3rd-party libraries; the second file (**guk.jar**, the GATE Unicode Kit) contains Unicode support (e.g. additional input methods for languages not currently supported by the JDK). They are separate because the latter has to be a Java extension with a privileged security profile.

1.3.2 Built-in Components

GATE includes resources for common LE data structures and algorithms, including documents, corpora and various annotation types, a set of language analysis components for Information Extraction and a range of data visualisation and editing components.

GATE supports documents in a variety of formats including XML, RTF, email, HTML, SGML and plain text. In all cases the format is analysed and converted into a single unified model of *annotation*. The annotation format is a modified form the TIPSTER format [Grishman 97] which has been made largely compatible with the Atlas format [Bird & Liberman 99], and uses the now standard mechanism of ‘stand-off markup’. GATE documents, corpora and annotations are stored in databases of various sorts, visualised via the development environment, and accessed at code level via the framework. See chapter 6 for more details of corpora etc.

A family of Processing Resources for language analysis is included in the shape of ANNIE, A Nearly-New Information Extraction system. These components use finite state techniques to implement various tasks from tokenisation to semantic tagging or verb phrase chunking. All ANNIE components communicate exclusively via GATE’s document and annotation resources. See chapter 8 for more details. See chapter 5 for visual resources. See chapter 9 for other miscellaneous CREOLE resources.

1.3.3 Additional Facilities

Three other facilities in GATE deserve special mention:

- JAPE, a Java Annotation Patterns Engine, provides regular-expression based pattern/action rules over annotations – see chapter 7.
- The ‘annotation diff’ tool in the development environment implements performance metrics such as precision and recall for comparing annotations. Typically a language analysis component developer will mark up some documents by hand and then use these along with the diff tool to automatically measure the performance of the components. See section 11.
- GUK, the GATE Unicode Kit, fills in some of the gaps in the JDK’s⁵ support for Unicode, e.g. by adding input methods for various languages from Urdu to Chinese. See section 3.29 for more details.

And by version 3 it will make a mean cup of tea.

⁵JDK: Java Development Kit, Sun Microsystem’s Java implementation. Unicode support is being actively improved by Sun, but at the time of writing many languages are still unsupported. In fact, Unicode itself doesn’t support all languages, e.g. Sylheti; hopefully this will change in time.

1.3.4 An Example

This section gives a very brief example of a typical use of GATE to develop and deploy language processing capabilities in an application, and to generate quantitative results for scientific publication.

Let's imagine that a developer called Fatima is building an email client⁶ for Cyberdyne Systems' large corporate Intranet. In this application she would like to have a language processing system that automatically spots the names of people in the corporation and transforms them into `mailto` hyperlinks.

A little investigation shows that GATE's existing components can be tailored to this purpose. Fatima starts up the development environment, and creates a new document containing some example emails. She then loads some processing resources that will do named-entity recognition (a tokeniser, gazetteer and semantic tagger), and creates an application to run these components on the document in sequence. Having processed the emails, she can see the results in one of several viewers for annotations.

The GATE components are a decent start, but they need to be altered to deal specially with people from Cyberdyne's personnel database. Therefore Fatima creates new "cyber-" versions of the gazetteer and semantic tagger resources, using the "bootstrap" tool. This tool creates a directory structure on disk that has some Java stub code, a Makefile and an XML configuration file. After several hours struggling with badly written documentation, Fatima manages to compile the stubs and create a JAR file containing the new resources. She tells GATE the URL of these files⁷, and the system then allows her to load them in the same way that she loaded the built-in resources earlier on.

Fatima then creates a second copy of the email document, and uses the annotation editing facilities to mark up the results that she would like to see her system producing. She saves this and the version that she ran GATE on into her Oracle datastore (set up for her by the Herculean efforts of the Cyberdyne technical support team, who like GATE because it enables them to claim lots of overtime). From now on she can follow this routine:

1. Run her application on the email test corpus.
2. Check the performance of the system by running the 'annotation diff' tool to compare her manual results with the system's results. This gives her both percentage accuracy figures and a graphical display of the differences between the machine and human outputs.
3. Make edits to the code, pattern grammars or gazetteer lists in her resources, and recompile where necessary.

⁶Perhaps because Outlook Express trashed her mail folder again, or because she got tired of Microsoft-specific viruses and hadn't heard of Netscape or Emacs.

⁷While developing, she uses a `file:/...` URL; for deployment she can put them on a web server.

4. Tell GATE to re-initialise the resources.
5. Go to 1.

To make the alterations that she requires, Fatima re-implements the ANNIE gazetteer so that it regenerates itself from the local personnel data. She then alters the pattern grammar in the semantic tagger to prioritise recognition of names from that source. This latter job involves learning the JAPE language (see chapter 7), but as this is based on regular expressions it isn't too difficult.

Eventually the system is running nicely, and her accuracy is 93% (there are still some problem cases, e.g. when people use nicknames, but the performance is good enough for production use). Now Fatima stops using the GATE development environment and works instead on embedding the new components in her email application. This application is written in Java, so embedding is very easy⁸: the two GATE JAR files are added to the project CLASSPATH, the new components are placed on a web server, and with a little code to do initialisation, loading of components and so on, the job is finished in half a day – the code to talk to GATE takes up only around 150 lines of the eventual application, most of which is just copied from the example in the `sheffield.examples.StandAloneAnnie` class.

Because Fatima is worried about Cyberdyne's unethical policy of developing Skynet to help the large corporates of the West strengthen their strangle-hold over the World, she wants to get a job as an academic instead (so that her conscience will only have to cope with the torture of students, as opposed to humanity). She takes the accuracy measures that she has attained for her system and writes a paper for the *Journal of Nasturtium Logarithm Encitement* describing the approach used and the results obtained. Because she used GATE for development, she can cite the repeatability of her experiments and offer access to example binary versions of her software by putting them on an external web server.

And everybody lived happily ever after.

1.4 Structure of the Book

The material presented in this book ranges from the conceptual (e.g. 'what is software architecture?') to practical instructions for programmers (e.g. how to deal with GATE exceptions) and linguists (e.g. how to write a pattern grammar). This diversity is something of an organisational challenge. Our (no doubt imperfect) solution is to collect specific instructions for 'how to do X' in a separate chapter (3). Other chapters give a more discursive presentation. In order to understand the whole system you must, unfortunately, read much of the book; in order to get help with a particular task, however, look first in chapter 3 and refer to other material as necessary.

⁸Languages other than Java require an additional interface layer, such as JNI, the Java Native Interface, which is in C.

The other chapters:

Chapter 4 describes the GATE architecture's component-based model of language processing, describes the lifecycle of GATE components, and how they can be grouped into applications and stored in databases and files.

Chapter 5 describes the set of Visual Resources that are bundled with GATE.

Chapter 6 describes GATE's model of document formats, annotated documents, annotation types, and corpora (sets of documents). It also covers GATE's facilities for reading and writing in the XML data interchange language.

Chapter 7 describes JAPE, a pattern/action rule language based on regular expressions over annotations on documents. JAPE grammars compile into cascaded finite state transducers.

Chapter 8 describes ANNIE, a pipelined Information Extraction system which is supplied with GATE.

Chapter 9 describes CREOLE resources bundled with the system that don't fit into the previous categories.

Chapter 10 describes processing resources and language resources for working with ontologies.

Chapter 11 describes how to measure the performance of language analysis components.

Chapter 12 describes the data store security model.

Appendix A discusses the design of the system.

Appendix B describes the implementation details and formal definitions of the JAPE annotation patterns language.

Appendix C describes in some detail the JAPE pattern grammars that are used in ANNIE for named-entity recognition.

1.5 Further Reading

Lots of documentation lives on the GATE web server, including:

- the concise application developer's guide (with emphasis on using the GATE API);
- the main system documentation tree;
- JavaDoc API documentation;

- HTML of the source code;
- parts of the requirements analysis that version 2 is based on.

For more details about Sheffield University's work in human language processing see the NLP group pages or [Cunningham 99a]. For more details about Information Extraction see *IE, a User Guide* or the Sheffield IE pages.

A list of publications on GATE and projects that use it (some of which are available on-line):

[**Cunningham et al. 02**] (ACL 2002) describes the GATE framework and graphical development environment as a tool for robust NLP applications.

[**Bontcheva et al. 02b**] (NLIS 2002) discusses how GATE can be used to create HLT modules for use in information systems.

[**Tablan et al. 02**] (LREC 2002) describes GATE's enhanced Unicode support.

[**Maynard et al. 02a**] (ACL 2002 Summarisation Workshop) describes using GATE to build a portable IE-based summarisation system in the domain of health and safety.

[**Maynard et al. 02c**] (Nordic Language Technology) describes various Named Entity recognition projects developed at Sheffield using GATE.

[**Maynard et al. 02b**] (AIMSA 2002) describes the adaptation of the core ANNIE modules within GATE to the ACE (Automatic Content Extraction) tasks.

[**Maynard et al. 02d**] (JNLE) describes robustness and predictability in LE systems, and presents GATE as an example of a system which contributes to robustness and to low overhead systems development.

[**Bontcheva et al. 02c**], [**Dimitrov 02a**] and [**Dimitrov 02b**] (TALN 2002, DAARC 2002, MSc thesis) describe the shallow named entity coreference modules in GATE: the orthomatcher which resolves pronominal coreference, and the pronoun resolution module.

[**Bontcheva et al. 02a**] (ACL 2002 Workshop) describes how GATE can be used as an environment for teaching NLP, with examples of and ideas for future student projects developed within GATE.

[**Pastra et al. 02**] (LREC 2002) discusses the feasibility of grammar reuse in applications using ANNIE modules.

[**Baker et al. 02**] (LREC 2002) report results from the EMILLE Indic languages corpus collection and processing project.

[**Saggion et al. 02b**] and [**Saggion et al. 02a**] (LREC 2002, SPLPT 2002) describes how ANNIE modules have been adapted to extract information for indexing multimedia material.

- [**Maynard et al. 01**] (RANLP 2001) discusses a project using ANNIE for named-entity recognition across wide varieties of text type and genre.
- [**Cunningham 00**] (PhD thesis) defines the field of Software Architecture for Language Engineering, reviews previous work in the area, presents a requirements analysis for such systems (which was used as the basis for designing GATE version 2), and evaluates the strengths and weaknesses of GATE version 1.
- [**Cunningham 02**] (Computers and the Humanities) describes the philosophy and motivation behind the system, describes GATE version 1 and how well it lived up to its design brief.
- [**McEnery et al. 00**] (Vivek) presents the EMILLE project in the context of which GATE's Unicode support for Indic languages has been developed.
- [**Cunningham et al. 00d**] and [**Cunningham 99c**] (technical reports) document early versions of JAPE (superceded by the present document).
- [**Cunningham et al. 00a**], [**Cunningham et al. 98a**] and [**Peters et al. 98**] (OntoLex 2000, LREC 1998) presents GATE's model of Language Resources, their access and distribution.
- [**Maynard et al. 00**] (technical report) surveys users of GATE up to mid-2000.
- [**Cunningham et al. 00c**] and [**Cunningham et al. 99**] (COLING 2000, AISB 1999) summarise experiences with GATE version 1.
- [**Cunningham et al. 00b**] (LREC 2000) taxonomises Language Engineering components and discusses the requirements analysis for GATE version 2.
- [**Bontcheva et al. 00**] and [**Brugman et al. 99**] (COLING 2000, technical report) describe a prototype of GATE version 2 that integrated with the EUDICO multimedia markup tool from the Max Planck Institute.
- [**Gambäck & Olsson 00**] (LREC 2000) discusses experiences in the Svensk project, which used GATE version 1 to develop a reusable toolbox of Swedish language processing components.
- [**Cunningham 99a**] (JNLE) reviewed and synthesised definitions of Language Engineering.
- [**Stevenson et al. 98**] and [**Cunningham et al. 98b**] (ECAI 1998, NeMLaP 1998) report work on implementing a word sense tagger in GATE version 1.
- [**Cunningham et al. 97b**] (ANLP 1997) presents motivation for GATE and GATE-like infrastructural systems for Language Engineering.
- [**Gaizauskas et al. 96b**, **Cunningham et al. 97a**, **Cunningham et al. 96e**] (ICTAI 1996, TITPSTER 1997, NeMLaP 1996) report work on GATE version 1.

[**Cunningham et al. 96c, Cunningham et al. 96d, Cunningham et al. 95**] (COLING 1996, AISB Workshop 1996, technical report) report early work on GATE version 1.

[**Cunningham et al. 96b**] (TIPSTER) discusses a selection of projects in Sheffield using GATE version 1 and the TIPSTER architecture it implemented.

[**Cunningham et al. 96a**] (manual) was the guide to developing CREOLE components for GATE version 1.

[**Gaizauskas et al. 96a**] (manual) was the user guide for GATE version 1.

[**Humphreys et al. 96**] (manual) describes the language processing components distributed with GATE version 1.

[**Cunningham 94, Cunningham et al. 94**] (NeMLaP 1994, technical report) argue that software engineering issues such as reuse, and framework construction, are important for language processing R&D.

Never in the history of the Research Assessment Exercise has so much been owed by so many to so few exercises in copy-and-paste.

Chapter 2

Changes Log

This chapter lists major changes to GATE in roughly chronological order by release. Changes in the documentation are also referenced here.

2.1 Version 3 Beta 1 (August 2004)

Version 3 incorporates a lot of new functionality and some reorganisation of existing components.

Note that Beta 1 is feature-complete but needs further debugging (please send us bug reports!).

Highlights include: completely rewritten document viewer/editor; extensive ontology support; a new plugin management system; separate .jar files and a Tomcat classloading fix; lots more CREOLE components (and some more to come soon).

Almost all the changes are backwards-compatible; some recent classes have been renamed (particularly the ontologies support classes) and a few events added (see below); datastores created by version 3 will probably not read properly in version 2. If you have problems use the mailing list and we'll help you fix your code!

The gorey details:

- CREOLE repositories and the components they contain are now managed as plugins. You can select the plugins the system knows about (and add new ones) by going to "Manage CREOLE Plugins" on the file menu.
- The `gate.jar` file no longer contains all the subsidiary libraries and CREOLE component resources. This makes it easier to replace library versions and/or not load them

when not required (libraries used by CREOLE builtins will now not be loaded unless you ask for them from the plugins manager console).

- ANNIE and other bundled components now have their resource files (e.g. pattern files, gazetteer lists) in a separate directory in the distribution – `gate/plugins`.
- Some testing with Sun’s JDK 1.5 pre-releases has been done and no problems reported.
- The `gate://` URL system used to load CREOLE and ANNIE resources in past releases is no longer needed. This means that loading in systems like Tomcat is now much easier.
- MAC OS X is now properly supported by the installed and the runtime.
- An Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool (OCAT) has been implemented as a GATE plugin. Documentation of its functionality is in Section 10.3.
- The NLG Lexical tools from the MIAKT project have now been released. See documentation in Section 9.11.
- The Features viewer/editor has been completely updated – see Sections 3.13 and 3.16 for details.
- The Document editor has been completely rewritten – see Section 3.4 for more information.
- The datastore viewer is now a full-size VR – see Section 3.18 for more information.

2.2 July 2004

GATE Documents now fire events when the document content is edited. This was added in order to support the new facility of editing documents from the GUI. This change will break backwards compatibility by requiring all `DocumentListener` implementations to implement a new method:

```
public void contentEdited(DocumentEvent e);
```

2.3 June 2004

A new algorithm has been implemented for the `AnnotationDiff` function. A new, more usable, GUI is included, and an "Export to HTML" option added. More details about the `AnnotationDiff` tool are in Section 3.20.

A new build process, based on ANT (<http://ant.apache.org/>) is now available for GATE. The old build process, based on `make`, is now unsupported. See Section 3.6 for details of the new build process.

A Jape Debugger from Ontos AG has been integrated in GATE. You can turn integration ON with command line option "-j". If you run the GATE GUI with this option, the new menu item for Jape Debugger GUI will appear in the Tools menu. The default value of integration is OFF. We are currently awaiting documentation for this.

NOTE! Keep in mind there is ClassCastException if you try to debug ConditionalCorpusPipeline. Jape Debugger is designed for Corpus Pipeline only. The Ontos code needs to be changed to allow debugging of ConditionalCorpusPipeline.

2.4 April 2004

GATE now has two alternative strategies for ontology-aware grammar transduction:

- using the [ontology] feature both in grammars and annotations; with the default Transducer.
- using the ontology aware transducer – passing an ontology LR to a new subsume method in the SimpleFeatureMapImpl. the latter strategy does not check for ontology features (this will make the writing of grammars easier – no need to specify ontology).

The changes are in:

- SinglePhaseTransducer (always call subsume with ontology – if null then the ordinary subsumption takes place)
- SimpleFeatureMapImpl (new subsume method using an ontology LR)

More information about the ontology-aware transducer can be found in Section 10.2.

A morphological analyser PR has been added to GATE. This finds the root and affix values of a token and adds them as features to that token.

A flexible gazetteer PR has been added to GATE. This performs lookup over a document based on the values of an arbitrary feature of an arbitrary annotation type, by using an externally provided gazetteer. See 9.4 for details.

2.5 March 2004

Support was added for the MAXENT machine learning library. (See 9.10.6 for details.)

2.6 Version 2.2 – August 2003

Note that GATE 2.2 works with JDK 1.4.0 or above. Version 1.4.2 is recommended, and is the one included with the latest installers.

GATE has been adapted to work with Postgres 7.3. The compatibility with PostgreSQL 7.2 has been preserved. See 3.30 for more details.

New library version – Lucene 1.3 (rc1)

A bug in `gate.util.Javac` has been fixed in order to account for situations when String literals require an encoding different from the platform default.

Temporary .java files used to compile JAPE RHS actions are now saved using UTF-8 and the "-encoding UTF-8" option is passed to the javac compiler.

A custom `tools.jar` is no longer necessary

Minor changes have been made to the look and feel of GATE to improve its appearance with JDK 1.4.2

Some bug fixes (087, 088, 089, 090, 091, 092, 093, 095, 096 – see <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/bugs.html> for more details).

2.7 Version 2.1 – February 2003

Integration of Machine Learning PR and WEKA wrapper (see Section 9.10).

Addition of DAML+OIL exporter (see Section 9.6).

Integration of WordNet in GATE (see Section 9.9).

The syntax tree viewer has been updated to fix some bugs.

2.8 June 2002

Conditional versions of the controllers are now available (see Section 3.12). These allow processing resources to be run conditionally on document features.

PostgreSQL Data Stores are now supported (see Section 4.7). These store data into a PostgreSQL RDBMS.

Addition of OntoGazetteer (see Section 5.2), an interface which makes ontologies visible

within GATE, and supports basic methods for hierarchy management and traversal.

Integration of Protégé (see Section 5.3), so that people with developed Protégé ontologies can use them within GATE.

Addition of IR facilities in GATE (see Section 9.8).

Modification of the corpus benchmark tool (see Section 3.21), which now takes an application as a parameter.

See also <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/bugs.html> for details of other recent bug fixes.

Chapter 3

How To...

“The law of evolution is that the strongest survives!”

“Yes; and the strongest, in the existence of any social species, are those who are most social. In human terms, most ethical. . . . There is no strength to be gained from hurting one another. Only weakness.”

The Dispossessed [p.183], Ursula K. le Guin, 1974.

This chapter describes how to complete common tasks using GATE. Sections that relate to the Development Environment are flagged [**D**]; those that relate to the framework are flagged [**F**]; sections relating to both are flagged [**D,F**].

There are two other primary sources for this type of information:

- for the development environment, see the visual tutorials available on our ‘movies’ page;
- for the framework, see the example code at <http://gate.ac.uk/GateExamples/doc/>.

3.1 Download GATE

To download GATE point your web browser at <http://gate.ac.uk/> and follow the download link. Fill in the form there, and you will be emailed an FTP address to download the system from.

3.2 Install and Run GATE

GATE will run anywhere that supports recent versions of Java (1.4.0 or above, 1.4.2 preferred), including Solaris, Linux and Windoze platforms. We don't run tests on other platforms, but have had reports of successful installs elsewhere (e.g. MacOS X).

3.2.1 The Easy Way

The easy way to install is to use one of the platform-specific installers (created using ZeroG's InstallAnywhere product). Download a 'platform-specific installer' and follow the instructions it gives you.

3.2.2 The Hard Way

Download one of the Java-only release packages, and follow the instructions below.

Prerequisites:

- A conforming Java 2 environment, version 1.4 or above, available free from Sun Microsystems or from your UNIX supplier. (We test on various Sun 1.3 and 1.4 JDKs on Solaris, Linux, NT 4, Windoze 2000 and Windoze XP.)
- Binaries from the GATE distribution you downloaded: `gate.jar`, `guk.jar` (Unicode editing support) and a suitable script to start Java, e.g. `gate.sh` or `gate.bat`. These are held in a directory called `bin` like this:

```
.../bin/  
  gate.jar  
  gate.sh  
  gate.bat  
  .../bin/ext/  
    guk.jar
```

- An open mind and a sense of humour.

Using the binary distribution:

- Unpack the distribution, creating a directory containing jar files and scripts.
- If you want to copy the scripts that run the system somewhere else, then you need to set some environment variables – see below.
- To run the development environment: on Windows, click on `gate.bat`; on UNIX run `gate.sh`.

- To embed GATE as a library, put `gate.jar` in your `CLASSPATH` and tell Java that `guk.jar` is an extension (`-Djava.ext.dirs=path-to-guk.jar`).

The scripts that start GATE (`gate.bat` or `gate.sh`) use three environment variables:

1. `JAVA_HOME` should point to the location of `java`; if it is not set the scripts assume that it is in your `PATH`. (Note: the ZeroG installer sets this variable for you in the startup script.)
2. `GATE_HOME` should point to the directory containing the binaries directory `bin` (which contains `gate.jar`, and the `ext` directory containing `guk.jar`). If not set, the scripts assume that these files live in the same directory as the script, or in `../build` and `../lib/ext` (so that you can use the script for full source distributions of the system as well as the binary distributions). (Note: the ZeroG installer sets this variable for you in the startup script.)
3. `GATE_CONFIG` should point to the directory containing the site-wide `gate.xml` configuration file (if such is required) – see section 3.5. If this is not set the scripts check the directory found for item 2 for any `gate.xml` file that may be present there.

The value of `GATE_CONFIG` is passed to the system by the scripts using either a `-i` command-line option, or the Java property `gate.config`.

3.3 Troubleshooting

On Windows 95 and 98, you may need to increase the amount of **environment space** available for the `gate.bat` script. Right click on the script, hit the memory tab and increase the ‘initial environment’ value to maximum.

Note that the `gate.bat` script uses `javaw.exe` to run GATE which means that you will see no console for the java process. If you have problems starting GATE and you would like to be able to see the console to check for messages then you should edit the `gate.bat` script and replace `javaw.exe` with `java.exe` in the definition of the `JAVA` environment variable.

When our FTP server is overloaded you may get a **blank download link** in the email sent to you after you register. Please try again later.

3.4 [D] Get Started with the GUI

Probably the best way to learn how to use the GATE graphical development environment is to look at the animated demonstrations and tutorials on the ‘movies’ page. There is also a

shorter manual aimed at those who just want to use GATE for annotating texts and viewing the results.

This section gives a short description of what is where in the main window of the system.

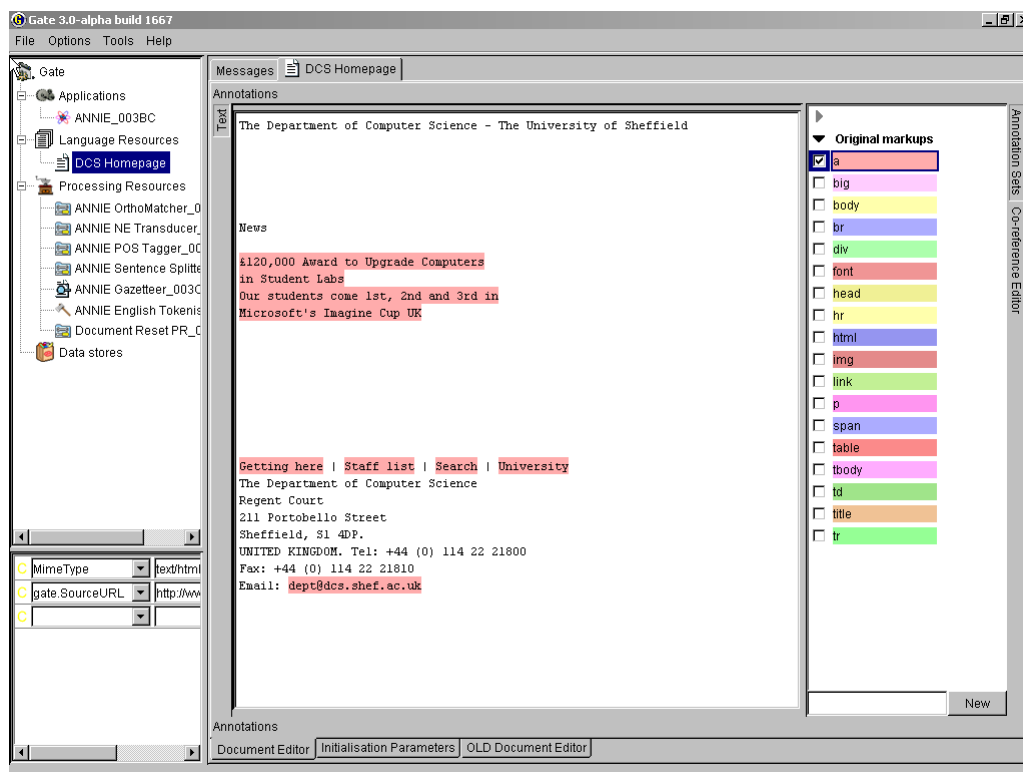


Figure 3.1: Main Window

Figure 3.1 shows the main window of the application, with a single document loaded. There are five main areas of the window:

1. the *menus bar* along the top, with ‘File’ etc.;
2. in the top left of the main area, a tree starting from ‘Gate’ and containing ‘Applications’, ‘Language Resources’ etc. – this is the *resources tree*;
3. in the bottom left of the main area, a black rectangle, which is the *small resource viewer*;
4. on the right of the main area, containing tabs with ‘Messages’ and ‘GATE Document.0001F’, the *main resource viewer*;
5. the *messages bar* along the bottom (where it says ‘Finished dumping...’).

The menu and the messages bars do the usual things. Longer messages are displayed in the messages tab in the main resource viewer area.

The resource tree and resource viewer areas work together to allow the system to display diverse resources in various ways. Visual Resources integrated with GATE can have a small view or a large view. For example, data stores have a small view; documents have a large view.

All the resources, applications and datastores currently loaded in the system appear in the resources tree; double clicking on a resource will load a viewer for the resource in one of the resource view areas.

3.5 [D,F] Configure GATE

When the GATE development environment is started, or when `Gate.init()` is called from the API, GATE loads various sorts of configuration data stored as XML in files generally called something like `gate.xml` or `.gate.xml`. This data holds information such as:

- whether to save settings on exit;
- what fonts the GUI should use;
- where the local Oracle database lives.

All of this type of data is stored at three levels (in order from general to specific):

- the system-wide level, located in the GATE resources packaged with the system¹;
- the site-wide level, whose location is specified by the environment variable `GATE_CONFIG` or the Java property `gate.config`;
- the user level, which lives in the user's HOME directory on UNIX or their profile directory on Windows (note that parts of this file are overwritten by GATE when saving user settings).

Where configuration data appears on several different levels, the more specific ones overwrite the more general. This means that you can set defaults for all GATE users on your system, for example, and allow individual users to override those defaults without interfering with others.

When using the GATE development environment, the site-wide config file is chosen depending on the settings of `GATE_CONFIG` and `GATE_HOME` (see section 3.2).

¹These are either in `gate/classes` or in `gate.jar` depending on whether you have a binary or a built version.

Configuration data can be set from the GUI via the ‘Options’ menu, ‘Configuration’ choice. The user can change the appearance of the GUI (via the Appearance submenu), which includes the options of font and the “look and feel”. The “Advanced” submenu enables the user to include annotation features when saving the document and preserving its format, to save the selected Options automatically on exit, and to save the session automatically on exit. The Input Methods menu (available via the Options menu) enables the user to change the default language for input. These options are all stored in the user’s `.gate.xml` file.

When using GATE from the framework, you can also set the site config location using `Gate.setSiteConfigFile(File)` prior to calling `Gate.init()`.

When using GATE from the framework, you can also set the site config location using `Gate.setSiteConfigFile(File)` prior to calling `Gate.init()`.

3.5.1 [F] Save Config Data to `gate.xml`

Arbitrary feature/value data items can be saved to the user’s `gate.xml` file via the following API calls:

To get the config data: `Map configData = Gate.getUserConfig()`.

To add config data simply put pairs into the map: `configData.put("my new config key", "value");`.

To write the config data back to the XML file: `Gate.writeUserConfig();`

Note that new config data will simply override old values, where the keys are the same. In this way defaults can be set up by putting their values in the main `gate.xml` file, or the site `gate.xml` file; they can then be overridden by the user’s `gate.xml` file.

3.6 Build GATE

Note that you don’t need to build GATE unless you’re doing development on the system itself.

Prerequisites:

- A conforming Java environment as above.
- The Apache Ant build tool, which can be downloaded for free from the Ant homepage. Version 1.6 or greater is needed to build GATE.

- An appreciation of natural beauty.

To build `gate`, cd to `gate` and:

1. Type:
`ant`
2. [optional] To test the system:
`ant test`
(Note that DB tests may fail unless you can connect to Sheffield's Oracle server.)
3. [optional] To make the Javadoc documentation:
`ant doc`
4. You can also run GATE using Ant, by typing:
`ant run`
5. To see a full list of options type: `ant help`

(The details of the build process are all specified by the `build.xml` file in the `gate` directory.)

You can also use a development environment like Borland JBuilder (click on the `gate.jpx` file), but note that it's still advisable to use `ant` to generate documentation, the jar file and so on. Also note that the run configurations have the location of a `gate.xml` site configuration file hard-coded into them, so you may need to change these for your site.

3.7 [D,F] Create a New CREOLE Resource

CREOLE resources are Java Beans (see chapter 4). They come in three types: Language Resource, Processing Resource and Visual Resource (see chapter 1 section 1.3.1). To create a new resource you need to:

- write a Java class that implements GATE's beans model;
- compile the class, and any others that it uses, into a Java Archive (JAR) file;

- write some XML configuration data for the new resource;
- tell GATE the URL of the new JAR and XML files.

The GATE development environment helps you with this process by creating a set of directories and files that implement a basic resource, including a Java code file and a Makefile. This process is called ‘bootstrapping’.

For example, let’s create a new component called GoldFish, which will be a Processing Resource that looks for all instances of the word ‘fish’ in a document and adds an annotation of type ‘GoldFish’.

First start the GATE development environment (see section 3.2). From the ‘Tools’ menu

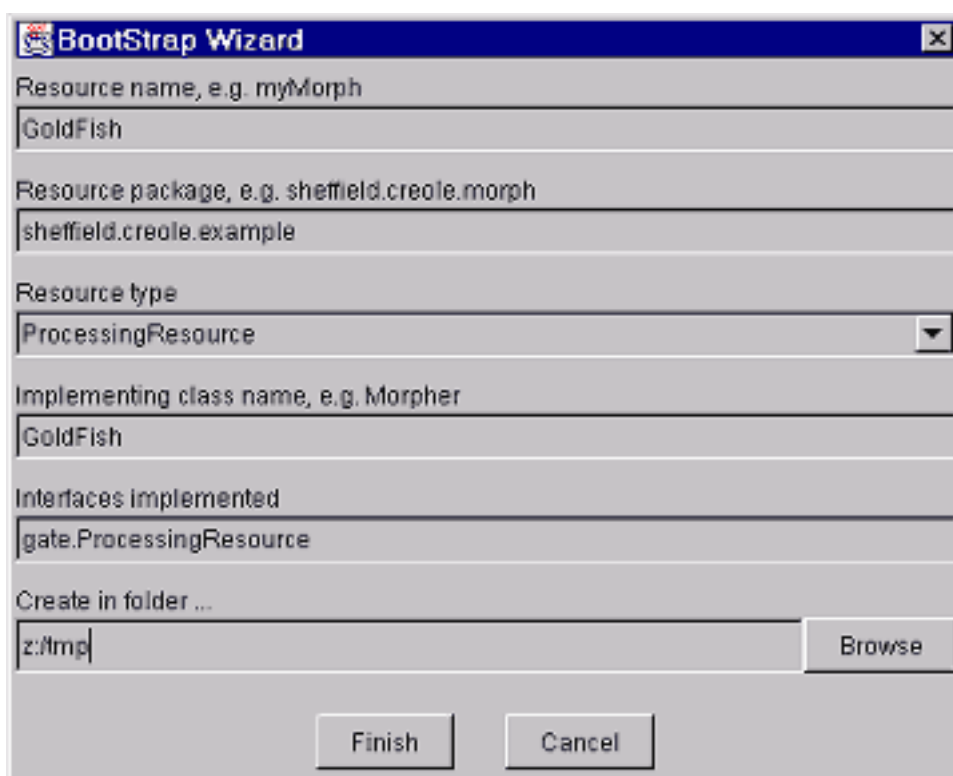


Figure 3.2: BootStrap Wizard Dialogue

select ‘BootStrap Wizard’, which will pop up the dialogue in figure 3.2. The meaning of the data entry fields:

- The ‘resource name’ will be displayed when GATE loads the resource, and will be the name of the directory the resource lives in. For our example: GoldFish.

- ‘Resource package’ is the Java package that the class representing the resource will be created in. For our example: `sheffield.creole.example`.
- ‘Resource type’ must be one of Language, Processing or Visual Resource. In this case we’re going to process documents (and add annotations to them), so we select `ProcessingResource`.
- ‘Implementing class name’ is the name of the Java class that represents the resource. For our example: `GoldFish`.
- The ‘interfaces implemented’ field allows you to add other interfaces (e.g. `java.util.Set`) that you would like your new resource to implement. In this case we just leave the default (which is to implement the `gate.ProcessingResource` interface).
- The last field selects the directory that you want the new resource created in. For our example: `z:/tmp`.

Now we need to compile the class, and create the JAR and XML files that allow GATE to load the new resource. (There’s no reason not to use your own favourite alternative, e.g. ANT.) For the pre-requisites of the build process that we use (based on Makefiles, and the GNU shell tools) see section 3.6. When you have these pre-requisites available do the following from a command prompt (working from the `GoldFish/build` directory that the bootstrapper created for you):

```
./configure
make depend
make
make jar
```

This will create the two files that GATE needs to load your new resource: `GoldFish.jar` and `creole.xml`.

You can now load this resource into GATE; see

- section 3.8 for how to instantiate the resource from the framework;
- section 3.9 for how to load the resource in the development environment;
- section 3.10 for how to configure and further develop your resource (which will, by default, do nothing!).

The default Java code that was created for our `GoldFish` resource looks like this:

```
/*
 * GoldFish.java
 *
 * You should probably put a copyright notice here. Why not use the
```

```

* GNU licence? (See http://www.gnu.org/.)
*
* hamish, 26/9/2001
*
* $Id: howto.tex,v 1.86 2004/08/06 15:27:18 mike Exp $
*/

package sheffield.creole.example;

import java.util.*;
import gate.*;
import gate.creole.*;
import gate.util.*;

/**
 * This class is the implementation of the resource GOLDFISH.
 */
public class GoldFish extends AbstractProcessingResource
    implements ProcessingResource {

} // class GoldFish

```

The default XML configuration for GoldFish looks like this:

```

<!-- resource.xml GoldFish -->
<!-- hamish, 26/9/2001 -->
<!-- $Id: howto.tex,v 1.86 2004/08/06 15:27:18 mike Exp $ -->

<CREOLE-DIRECTORY>

<CREOLE>
  <RESOURCE>
    <NAME>GoldFish</NAME>
    <JAR>GoldFish.jar</JAR>
    <CLASS>sheffield.creole.example.GoldFish</CLASS>
  </RESOURCE>
</CREOLE>

</CREOLE-DIRECTORY>

```

The directory structure containing these files is shown in figure 3.3. `GoldFish.java` lives in the `src/sheffield/creole/example` directory. `creole.xml` is generated in the `build` directory from a source file called `resource.xml` which lives in the `src` directory. (The `lib` directory is for libraries; the `classes` directory is where Java class files are placed; the `doc` directory is for documentation.)

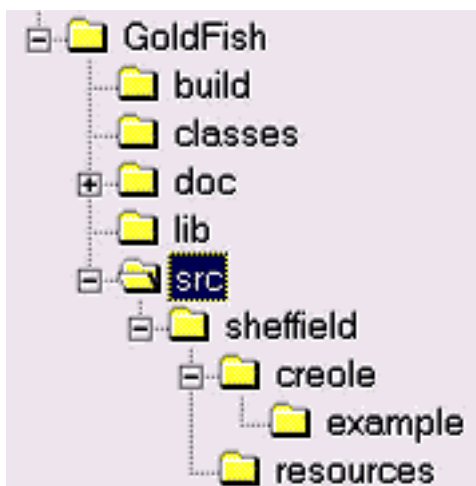


Figure 3.3: BootStrap directory tree

This process has the advantage that it creates a complete source tree and build structure for the component, and the disadvantage that it creates a complete source tree and build structure for the component. If you already have a source tree, you will need to chop out the bits you need from the new tree (in this case `GoldFish.java` and `resource.xml`) and copy it into your existing one.

3.8 [F] Instantiate CREOLE Resources

This section describes how to create CREOLE resources as objects in a running Java virtual machine. This process involves using GATE's `Factory` class, and, in the case of LRs, may also involve using a `DataStore`.

CREOLE resources are Java Beans; creation of a resource object involves using a default constructor, then setting parameters on the bean, then calling an `init()` method². The `Factory` takes care of all this, makes sure that the GUI is told about what is happening (when GUI components exist at runtime), and also takes care of restoring LRs from `DataStores`. So a programmer using GATE should **never call the constructor** of a resource: always use the `Factory`.

The valid parameters for a resource are described in the resource's section of its `creole.xml` file – see section 3.10.

Creating a resource via the `Factory` involves passing values for any create-time parameters that require setting to the `Factory`'s `createResource` method. If no parameters are passed, the defaults are used. So, for example, the following code creates a default ANNIE part-of-

²This method is not part of the beans spec.

speech tagger:

```
FeatureMap params = Factory.newFeatureMap(); // empty map: default parameters
ProcessingResource tagger = (ProcessingResource)
    Factory.createResource("gate.creole.POSTagger", params);
```

Note that if the resource created here had any parameters that were both mandatory and had no default value, the `createResource` call would throw an exception. In this case, all the information needed to create a tagger is available in default values given in the tagger's XML definition:

```
<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>ANNIE POS Tagger</NAME>
  <COMMENT>Mark Hepple's Brill-style POS tagger</COMMENT>
  <CLASS>gate.creole.POSTagger</CLASS>
  <PARAMETER NAME="document"
    COMMENT="The document to be processed"
    RUNTIME="true">gate.Document</PARAMETER>
  . . . .
  <PARAMETER NAME="rulesURL" DEFAULT="gate:/creole/heptag/ruleset"
    COMMENT="The URL for the ruleset file"
    OPTIONAL="true">java.net.URL</PARAMETER>
</RESOURCE>
```

Here the two parameters shown are either 'runtime' parameters, which are set before a PR is executed, or have a default value (in this case the default rules file is distributed with GATE itself).

When creating a Document, however, the URL of the source for the document must be provided³. For example:

```
URL u = new URL("http://gate.ac.uk/hamish/");
FeatureMap params = Factory.newFeatureMap();
params.put("sourceUrl", u);
Document doc = (Document)
    Factory.createResource("gate.corpora.DocumentImpl", params);
```

The document created here is transient: when you quit the JVM the document will no longer exist. If you want the document to be persistent, you need to store it in a `DataStore`. Assuming that you have a `DataStore` already open called `myDataStore`, this code will ask the data store to take over persistence of your document, and to synchronise the memory representation of the document with the disk storage:

³Alternatively a string giving the document source may be provided.


```
Document persistentDoc = myDataStore.adopt(doc, mySecurity);
myDataStore.sync(persistentDoc);
```

Security:

User access to the LRs is provided by a security mechanism of users and groups, similar to those on an operating system. When users create/save LRs into Oracle, they specify reading and writing access rights for users from their group and other users. For example, LRs created by one user/group can be made read-only to others, so they can use the data, but not modify it. The access modes are:

- others: read/none;
- group: modify/read/none;
- owner: modify/read.

If needed, ownership can be transferred from one user to another. Users, groups and LR permissions are administered in a special administration tool, by a privileged user. For more details see chapter 12.

When you want to restore a document (or other LR) from a data store, you make the same `createResource` call to the Factory as for the creation of a transient resource, but this time you tell it the data store the resource came from, and the ID of the resource in that data store:

```
URL u = ....; // URL of a serial data store directory
SerialDataStore sds = new SerialDataStore(u.toString());
sds.open();

// getLrIds returns a list of LR Ids, so we get the first one
Object lrId = sds.getLrIds("gate.corpora.DocumentImpl").get(0);

// we need to tell the factory about the LR's ID in the data
// store, and about which data store it is in - we do this
// via a feature map:
FeatureMap features = Factory.newFeatureMap();
features.put(DataStore.LR_ID_FEATURE_NAME, lrId);
features.put(DataStore.DATASTORE_FEATURE_NAME, sds);

// read the document back
Document doc = (Document)
    Factory.createResource("gate.corpora.DocumentImpl", features);
```

3.9 [D] Load CREOLE Resources

3.9.1 Loading Language Resources

Load a language resource by right clicking on “Language Resources” and selecting a language resource type (document, corpus or annotation schema). Choose a name for the resource, and choose any parameters as necessary.

For a document, a file or url should be selected as the value of “sourceUrl” (double clicking in the “values” box brings up a tree structure to enable selection of documents). Other parameters can be selected or changed as necessary, such as the encoding of the document, and whether it should be markup aware.

There are three ways of adding documents to a corpus:

1. When creating the corpus, clicking on the icon under Value brings up a popup window with a list of the documents already loaded into GATE. This enables the user to add any documents to the corpus.
2. Alternatively, the corpus can be loaded first, and documents added later by double clicking on the corpus and using the + and - icons to add or remove documents to the corpus. Note that the documents must have been loaded into GATE before they can be added to the corpus.
3. Once loaded, the corpus can be populated by right clicking on the corpus and selecting “Populate”. With this method, documents do not have to have been previously loaded into GATE, as they will be loaded during the population process. Select the directory containing the relevant files, choose the encoding, and check or uncheck the “recurse directories” box as appropriate. The initial value for the encoding is the platform default.

To add a new annotation schema, simply choose the name and the path or Url. For more information about schema, see 6.4.1.

3.9.2 Loading Processing Resources

This section describes how to load and run CREOLE resources not present in ANNIE. To load ANNIE, see Section 3.14. For technical descriptions of these resources, see Chapter 9. All these resources are loaded by selecting them from the set of Processing Resources (right click on Processing Resources or select “New Processing Resource” from the File menu), adding them to the application and selecting the input and output Annotation Sets (and any other parameters as necessary).

3.9.3 Loading and Processing Large Corpora

Create and populate a corpus in the usual way, and then save it to a data store. Delete any documents that you have open in memory, but keep the corpus open. Then use a corpus pipeline to run your application over the corpus as usual. Then save the corpus back to the datastore once the application has been run.

If the corpus is so big that GATE runs out of memory when populating the corpus, there is also a facility which allows you to create a datastore from a large corpus by opening the documents one by one, saving them, and unloading them from RAM. To run this utility, copy your `gate.sh/gate.bat` to another one and change the class which is run to be:

```
gate.util.CorporaSaver
```

and also, put only one parameter after that, which is the directory which contains your texts.

3.10 [D,F] Configure CREOLE Resources

This section describes how to write entries in the `creole.xml` file that is used to describe resources to GATE. This data is used to tell GATE things like what parameters a resource has, how to display it if it has a visualisation, etc.

An example file:

```
<CREOLE-DIRECTORY>
  <CREOLE>
    <RESOURCE>
      <NAME>GATE XML Document Format</NAME>
      <CLASS>gate.corpora.XmlDocumentFormat</CLASS>
      <AUTOINSTANCE/>
      <PRIVATE/>
      <JAR>gate.jar</JAR>
    </RESOURCE>
  </CREOLE>
</CREOLE-DIRECTORY>
```

These files have as a root element `CREOLE-DIRECTORY`, and may contain any number of `CREOLE` elements, which in turn contain any number of `RESOURCE` elements⁴.

⁴The purpose of the `CREOLE` element is to allow files to be build up from the concatenation of multiple other files.

Each resource must give a name, a Java class and the JAR file that it can be loaded from. The above example defines GATE's XML document format analyser resource. This resource has no parameters, is automatically loaded when the `creole.xml` data is loaded, is not displayed to the GUI user (it is used internally by the document creation code), and is loaded from `gate.jar`.

Resources may also have parameters of various types. These resources, from the GATE distribution, illustrate the various types of parameters:

```
<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>GATE document</NAME>
  <CLASS>gate.corpora.DocumentImpl</CLASS>
  <INTERFACE>gate.Document</INTERFACE>
  <COMMENT>GATE transient document</COMMENT>
  <OR>
    <PARAMETER NAME="sourceUrl"
      SUFFIXES="txt;text;xml;xhtm;xhtml;html;htm;sgml;sgm;mail;email;eml;rtf"
      COMMENT="Source URL">java.net.URL</PARAMETER>
    <PARAMETER NAME="stringContent"
      COMMENT="The content of the document">java.lang.String</PARAMETER>
  </OR>
  <PARAMETER
    COMMENT="Should the document read the original markup"
    NAME="markupAware" DEFAULT="true">java.lang.Boolean</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="encoding" OPTIONAL="true"
    COMMENT="Encoding" DEFAULT="">java.lang.String</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="sourceUrlStartOffset"
    COMMENT="Start offset for documents based on ranges"
    OPTIONAL="true">java.lang.Long</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="sourceUrlEndOffset"
    COMMENT="End offset for documents based on ranges"
    OPTIONAL="true">java.lang.Long</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="preserveOriginalContent"
    COMMENT="Should the document preserve the original content"
    DEFAULT="false">java.lang.Boolean</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="collectRepositioningInfo"
    COMMENT="Should the document collect repositioning information"
    DEFAULT="false">java.lang.Boolean</PARAMETER>
  <ICON>lr.gif</ICON>
</RESOURCE>
```

```
<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>Document Reset PR</NAME>
  <CLASS>gate.creole.annotdelete.AnnotationDeletePR</CLASS>
```

```

<COMMENT>Document cleaner</COMMENT>
<PARAMETER NAME="document" RUNTIME="true">gate.Document</PARAMETER>
<PARAMETER NAME="annotationTypes" RUNTIME="true"
  OPTIONAL="true">java.util.ArrayList</PARAMETER>
</RESOURCE>

```

Parameters may be optional, and may have default values (and may have comments to describe their purpose, which is displayed by the GUI during interactive parameter setting).

Some PR parameters are execution time (**RUNTIME**), some are initialisation time. E.g. at execution time a doc is supplied to a language analyser; at initialisation time a grammar may be supplied to a language analyser.

Each parameter has a type, which may be the type of another resource, or a Java built in. Attributes of parameters:

NAME: name of the property that the parameter refers to; if supplied it will change the name that the initialisation routines assume are available to get/set on the resource (which are normally based on the value of the parameter, i.e. on the type of the parameter). The name must be identical to the property of the resource that the parameter relates to.

DEFAULT: default value.

RUNTIME: doesn't need setting at initialisation time, but must be set before calling `execute()`. Only meaningful for PRs

OPTIONAL: not required

COMMENT: for display purposes

Visual Resources also have a **GUI** tag, which describes the resource (PR or LR) that it displays, whether it is the main viewer for that resource or not (main viewers are the first tab displayed for a resource) and whether the VR should go in the small viewers window or the large one. For example:

```

<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>Features Editor</NAME>
  <CLASS>gate.gui.FeaturesEditor</CLASS>
  <!-- type values can be "large" or "small"-->
  <GUI TYPE="large">
    <MAIN_VIEWER/>
    <RESOURCE_DISPLAYED>gate.util.FeatureBearer</RESOURCE_DISPLAYED>
  </GUI>
</RESOURCE>

```

More information:

- To collect PRs into an application and run them, see section 3.11.
- GATE’s internal creole.xml file (note that there are no JAR entries there, as the file is bundled with GATE itself).

3.11 [D] Create and Run an Application

Once all the resources have been loaded, an application can be created and run. Right click on “Applications” and select “New” and then either “Corpus Pipeline” or “Pipeline”. A pipeline application can only be run over a single document, while a corpus pipeline can be run over a whole corpus.

To build the pipeline, double click on it, and select the resources needed to run the application (you may not necessarily wish to use all those which have been loaded). Transfer the necessary components from the set of “loaded components” displayed on the left hand side of the main window to the set of “selected components” on the right, by selecting each component and clicking on the left and right arrows, or by double-clicking on each component. Ensure that the components selected are listed in the correct order for processing (starting from the top). If not, select a component and move it up or down the list using the up/down arrows at the left side of the pane. Ensure that any parameters necessary are set for each processing resource (by clicking on the resource from the list of selected resources and checking the relevant parameters from the pane below). For example, if you wish to use annotation sets other than the Default one, these must be defined for each processing resource. Note that if a corpus pipeline is used, the corpus needs only to be set once, using the drop-down menu beside the “corpus” box. If a pipeline is used, the document must be selected for each processing resource used. Finally, right-click on “Run” to run the application on the document or corpus.

For how to use the *conditional* versions of the pipelines see section 3.12.

3.12 [D] Run PRs Conditionally on Document Features

The “Conditional Pipeline” and “Conditional Corpus Pipeline” application types are conditional versions of the pipelines mentioned in section 3.11 and allow processing resources to be run or not according to the value of a feature on the document. In terms of graphical interface, the only addition brought by the conditional versions of the applications is a box situated underneath the lists of available and selected resources which allows the user to choose whether the currently selected processing resource will run always, never or only on the documents that have a particular value for a named feature.

If the *Yes* option is selected then the corresponding resource will be run on all the documents processed by the application as in the case of non-conditional applications. If the *No* option is selected then the corresponding resource will never be run; the application will simply ignore its presence. This option can be used to temporarily and quickly disable an application component, for debugging purposes for example.

The *If value of feature* option permits running specific application components conditionally on document features. When selected, this option enables two text input fields that are used to enter the name of a feature and the value of that feature for which the corresponding processing resource will be run. When a conditional application is run over a document, for each component that has an associated condition, the value of the named feature is checked on the document and the component will only be used if the value entered by the user matches the one contained in the document features.

3.13 [D] View Annotations

To view a document, double click on the filename in the left hand pane. Note that it may take a few seconds for the text to be displayed if it is long.

To view the annotation sets, click on AnnotationSets on the right pane. This will bring up the annotation sets viewer, which displays the annotation sets available and their corresponding annotation types. Note that the default annotation set has no name. If no application has been run, the only annotations to be displayed will be those corresponding to the document format analysis performed automatically by GATE on loading the document (e.g. HTML or XML tags). If an application has been run, other annotation types and/or annotation sets may also be present. The fonts and colours of the annotations can be edited by double clicking on the annotation name.

Select the annotation types to be viewed by clicking on the appropriate checkbox(es). The text segments corresponding to these annotations will be highlighted in the main text window.

To view the annotations and their features, click on Annotations at the top or bottom of the main window. The annotation viewer will appear above or below the main text, respectively. It will only contain the annotations selected from the annotation sets. These lists can be sorted in ascending and descending order by any column, by clicking on the corresponding column heading. Clicking on an entry in the table will also highlight the respective matching text portion.

Hovering over some part of the text in the main window will bring up a popup box containing a list of the annotations associated with it (assuming that the relevant annotation types have been selected from the annotation set viewer).

Annotations relating to coreference (if relevant) are displayed separately in the coreference

viewer. This operates in the same way as the annotation sets viewer.

At any time, the main viewer can also be used to display other information, such as Messages, by clicking on the header at the top of the main window. If an error occurs in processing, the messages tab will flash red, and an additional popup error message may also occur.

3.14 [D] Do Information Extraction with ANNIE

This section describes how to load and run ANNIE (see Chapter 8) from the development environment. To embed ANNIE in other software, see section 3.23.

From the File menu, select “Load ANNIE system”. To run it in its default state, choose “With Defaults”. This will automatically load all the ANNIE resources, and create a corpus pipeline called ANNIE with the correct resources selected in the right order, and the default input and output annotation sets.

If “Without Defaults” is selected, the same processing resources will be loaded, but a popup window will appear for each resource, which enables the user to specify a name and location for the resource. This is exactly the same procedure as for loading a processing resource individually, the difference being that the system automatically selects those resources contained within ANNIE. When the resources have been loaded, a corpus pipeline called ANNIE will be created as before.

The next step is to add a corpus (see Section 3.9.1), and select this corpus from the drop-down Corpus menu in the Serial Application editor. Finally click on Run (from the Serial Application editor, or by right clicking on the application name and selecting “Run”). To view the results, double click on the filename in the left hand pane.

3.15 [D] Modify ANNIE

If you have downloaded GATE via the installers method, you first need to get access to the existing ANNIE resources. To do this:

- locate gate.jar (in the bin directory of the installation)
- copy it somewhere else
- rename it to gate.zip
- unpack gate.zip

Then you can simply locate the existing resources you want to modify or whatever you want to modify, make a copy with a new name, edit them, and load the new resources into GATE as new Processing Resources (see Section 3.9.2).

3.16 [D] Create and Edit Test Data

Since many NLP algorithms require annotated corpora for training, GATE's development environment provides easy-to-use and extendable facilities for text annotation. The annotation can be done manually by the user or semi-automatically by running some processing resources over the corpus and then correcting/adding new annotations manually. Depending on the information that needs to be annotated, some ANNIE modules can be used or adapted to bootstrap the corpus annotation task.

To create annotations manually:

- Select the text you want to annotate
- The most recent annotation type to have been used will be displayed in a popup box. If this is not the one you want, use the menu to change it. If it is correct, you need do nothing further. You can add or change features and their values using the menu in the box.
- To delete an annotation, click on the red X in the popup box.

The popup menu only contains annotation types present in the Annotation Schema and those already listed in the relevant Annotation Set. To create a new Annotation Schema, see Section 3.17. The popup menu can be edited to add a new annotation type, however.

Figure 3.4 demonstrates adding the Organization annotation for the string “University of Sheffield” (highlighted in grey) to the Default Annotation set.

3.16.1 Saving the test data

The data can either be dumped out as a file (see Section 3.25) or saved in a data store (see Section 3.18).

3.17 [D,F] Create a New Annotation Schema

GUI

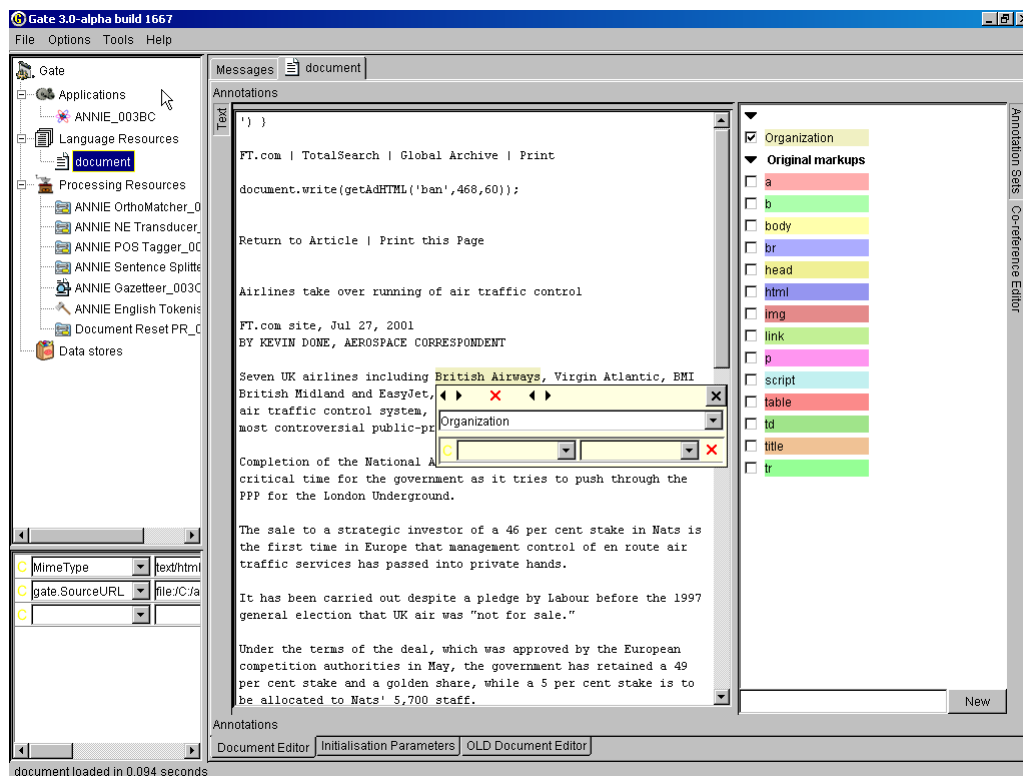


Figure 3.4: Adding an Organization annotation to the Default Annotation Set

An annotation schema file can be loaded or unloaded in GATE just like any other language resource. Once loaded into the system, the SchemaAnnotationEditor will use this definition when creating or editing annotations.

API

Another way to bring an annotation schema inside GATE is through creole.xml file. By using the AUTOINSTANCE element, one can create instances of resources defined in creole.xml. The gate.creole.AnnotationSchema (which is the Java representation of an annotation schema file) initializes with some predefined annotation definitions (annotation schemas) as specified by the GATE team.

Example from GATE's creole.xml:

```
<!-- Annotation schema -->
<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>Annotation schema</NAME>
  <CLASS>gate.creole.AnnotationSchema</CLASS>
  <COMMENT>An annotation type and its features</COMMENT>
  <PARAMETER NAME="xmlFileUrl" COMMENT="The url to the definition file"
    SUFFIXES="xml;xsd">java.net.URL</PARAMETER>
```

```

<AUTOINSTANCE><PARAM NAME ="xmlFileUrl"
  VALUE ="gate:/creole/schema/DateSchema.xml"/></AUTOINSTANCE>
<AUTOINSTANCE><PARAM NAME ="xmlFileUrl"
  VALUE ="gate:/creole/schema/FacilitySchema.xml"/></AUTOINSTANCE>
<AUTOINSTANCE><PARAM NAME ="xmlFileUrl"
  VALUE ="gate:/creole/schema/TokenSchema.xml"/></AUTOINSTANCE>
<AUTOINSTANCE><PARAM NAME ="xmlFileUrl"
  VALUE ="gate:/creole/schema/SyntaxTreeNodeSchema.xml"/></AUTOINSTANCE>
<AUTOINSTANCE><PARAM NAME ="xmlFileUrl"
  VALUE ="gate:/creole/schema/CorefSchema.xml"/></AUTOINSTANCE>
</RESOURCE>

```

In order to create a `gate.creole.AnnotationSchema` object from a schema annotation file, one must use the `gate.Factory` class.

Eg:

```

FeatureMap params = new FeatureMap();
param.put("xmlFileUrl",annotSchemaFile.toURL());
AnnotationSchema annotSchema =
Factory.createResource("gate.creole.AnnotationSchema", params);

```

Note: All the elements and their values must be written in lower case, as XML is defined as case sensitive and the parser used for XML Schema inside GATE searches is case sensitive.

In order to be able to write XML Schema definitions, the ones defined in GATE (resources/creole/schema) can be used as a model, or the user can have a look at <http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSchema> for a proper description of the semantics of the elements used.

Some examples of annotation schemas are given in Section 6.4.1.

3.18 [D] Save and Restore LRs in Data Stores

To save a text in a data store, a new data store must first be created if one does not already exist. Create a data store by right clicking on Data Store in the left hand pane, and select the option "Create Data Store". Select the data store type you wish to use. Create a directory to be used as the data store (note that the data store is a directory and not a file). Save the text to the data store by right clicking on the document name and selecting the "Save to..." option (giving the name of the datastore created earlier).

To load a document from a data store, do not try to load it as a language resource. Instead, open the data store by right clicking on Data Store in the left hand pane, select "Open Data Store" and choose the data store to open. The filenames contained in the data store should appear in the left hand pane. Double click on a file to open it. Once opened, the file will

then appear under Language Resources in the left hand pane. Double click on this file to view it in the main window. It can be treated in the same way as any other document.

3.19 [D] Save Resource Parameter State to File

Resources, and applications that are made up of them, are created based on the settings of their parameters (see section 3.9). It is possible to save the data used to create an application to file and re-load it later. To save the application to file, right click on it in the resources tree and select “Save application state”, which will give you a file creation dialogue.

To restore the application later, select “Restore application from file” from the “File” menu.

Note that the data that is saved represents how to *recreate* an application – not the resources that make up the application itself. So, for example, if your application has a resource that initialises itself from some file (e.g. a grammar) then that file must still exist when you restore the application.

The file resulted from saving the application state contains the values of the initialisation parameters for all the processing resources contained by the stored application. For the parameters of type URL (which are typically used to select external resources such as grammars or rules files) a transformation is applied so that all the paths are relative to the location of the file used to store the state. This means that the resource files used by an application do not need to be in the same location as when the application was initially created but rather in the same *location relative to the location of the application file*. This allows the creation and deployment of portable applications by keeping the application file and the resource files used by the application together. The easiest way of deploying a portable GATE application is to store the application file and the application resources under the same top directory which will become the deployment unit.

3.20 [D,F] Perform Evaluation with the Annotation-Diff tool

Section 11 describes the theory behind this tool.

3.20.1 GUI

The annotation tool is activated by selecting it from the Tools menu at the top of the window. It will appear in a new window. Select the key and response documents to be used (note

that both must have been previously loaded into the system), the annotation sets to be used for each, and the annotation type to be evaluated.

Note that the tool automatically intersects all the annotation types from the selected key annotation set with all types from the response set.

On a separate note, you can perform a diff on the same document, between two different annotation sets. One annotation set could contain the key type and another could contain the response one.

After the type has been selected, the user is required to decide how the features will be compared. It is important to know that the tool compares them by analyzing if features from the key set are contained in the response set. It checks for both the feature name and feature value to be the same.

There are three basic options to select:

- To take all the features from the key set into consideration
- To take only the user selected ones
- To ignore all the features from the key set.

If false positives are to be measured, select the annotation type (and relevant annotation set) to be used as the denominator (normally, Token or Sentence). The weight for the F-Measure can also be changed - by default it is set to 0.5 (i.e. to give precision and recall equal weight). Finally, click on "Evaluate" to display the results. Note that the window may need to be resized manually, by dragging the window edges or internal bars as appropriate).

In the main window, the key and response annotations will be displayed. They can be sorted by any category by clicking on the relevant column header. The key and response annotations will be aligned if their indices are identical, and are color coded according to the legend displayed.

Precision, recall, F-measure and false positives are also displayed below the annotation tables, each according to 3 criteria - strict, lenient and average. See sections 11.1 and 11.4 for more details about the evaluation metrics.

The results can be saved to an HTML file by pressing the "Export to HTML" button. This creates an HTML snapshot of what the AnnotationDiff interface shows at that moment. The columns and rows in the table will be shown in the same order, and the hidden columns will not appear in the HTML file. The colours will also be the same.

3.20.2 API

Since Annotation Diff is a tool, not a processing resource, it needs to be constructed directly, via its constructor. Then all its parameters are set using the respective mutator methods (i.e., setXXX()), and finally the `init()` method needs to be called to make it calculate the statistics.

Example:

```
AnnotationDiff annotDiff = new AnnotationDiff();
annotDiff.setKeyDocument(keyDocument);
annotDiff.setResponseDocument(responseDocument);
annotDiff.setAnnotationSchema(annotationSchema);
annotDiff.setKeyAnnotationSetName(
    GateConstants.ORIGINAL_MARKUPS_ANNOT_SET_NAME);
annotDiff.setResponseAnnotationSetName(
    GateConstants.ORIGINAL_MARKUPS_ANNOT_SET_NAME);
annotDiff.init();
```

It is important to know that its `init()` method performs the diff between two sets of annotations. So, after the initialization, one could use the `getZZZ()` methods to read the results of the evaluation.

3.20.3 Annotation Diff parameters

All Annotation Diff parameters by default are initialized to **null** (except `textMode`) and they are as follows:

`keyDocument` = the document holding the key annotation sets that will be used in the evaluation. It is a `gate.Document` and if it is null then `init()` will throw a `ResourceInstantiationException`.

`responseDocument` = the document processed by GATE, containing annotation sets generated by the system. `AnnotationDiff` will behave the same as the `keyDocument` if this parameter it is set to null.

`annotationSchema` = It represent an `gate.creole.AnnotationSchema` object that describes an annotation. The information used by the `Annotation Diff` is the type of the annotations being evaluated.

`keyAnnotationSetName` = a `String` representing the name of the annotation set from the key document that also holds annotations of the type specified in the `annotationSchema` parameter. If it's set to null then the default annotation set will be used.

responseAnnotationSetName = same as for the key annotation set.

keyFeatureNamesSet = a Set containing keys (the keys of the features from the annotation key set taken into consideration when performing the diff). If it is null, then all the features from the key set will be taken into consideration. If it is an empty set, then no feature will be taken into consideration. Otherwise only the keys specified in this set will be taken into consideration by the evaluation process.

textMode = if set to **true**, it will not construct the graphic components (like for example the table displaying the results). The structure used for building the graphic representation will be constructed and AnnotationDiff will provide means to access its results through its get...() methods. By default, this parameter is set to **false**.

3.20.4 Reading the results from the Annotation Diff

By using the API all the calculated measures can be accessed through getZZZ() methods.

Example:

```
annotDiff.getPrecisionAverage();
annotDiff.getPrecisionLenient();
annotDiff.getPrecisionStrict();
...
```

All four types of classified annotations can be accessed using only one special get method called getAnnotationsOfType.

Example:

```
AnnotationSet correctAnnot=
annotDiff.getAnnotationsOfType(AnnotationDiff.CORRECT_TYPE);

AnnotationSet partiallyCorrectAnnot=
annotDiff.getAnnotationsOfType(AnnotationDiff.PARTIALLY_CORRECT_TYPE);

AnnotationSet missingAnnot=
annotDiff.getAnnotationsOfType(AnnotationDiff.MISSING_TYPE);

AnnotationSet spuriousAnnot=
annotDiff.getAnnotationsOfType(AnnotationDiff.SPURIOUS_TYPE);
```

3.21 [D] Use the Corpus Benchmark Evaluation tool

The Corpus Benchmark tool can be run in two ways: standalone and GUI mode. Section 11.3 describes the theory behind this tool.

3.21.1 GUI mode

To use the tool in GUI mode, first make sure the properties of the tool have been set correctly (see section 3.21.3 for how to do this). Then select “Corpus Benchmark Tool” from the Options menu. There are 3 ways in which it can be run:

- **Default mode** compares the stored processed set with the current processed set and the human-annotated set. This will give information about how well the system is doing compared with a previous version.
- **Human marked against stored processing results** compares the stored processed set with the human-annotated set.
- **Human marked against current processing results** compares the current processed set with the human-annotated set.

Once the mode has been selected, choose the directory where the corpus is to be found. The corpus must have a directory structure consisting of “clean” and “marked” subdirectories. The clean directory should contain the raw texts; the marked directory should contain the human-annotated texts. Finally, select the application to be run on the corpus (for “default” and “human v current” modes).

If the tool is to be used in Default or Current mode, the corpus must first be processed with the current set of resources. This is done by selecting “Store corpus for future evaluation” from the Corpus Benchmark Tool. Select the corpus to be processed (from the top of the subdirectory structure, i.e. the directory containing the marked and stored subdirectories). If a “processed” subdirectory exists, the results will be placed there; if not, one will be created.

Once the corpus has been processed, the tool can be run in Default or Current mode. The resulting HTML file will be output in the main GATE messages window. This can then be pasted into a text editor and viewed in an internet browser for easier viewing.

The tool can be used either in verbose or non-verbose mode, by selecting the verbose option from the menu. In verbose mode, any score below the user’s pre-defined threshold (stored in `corpus_tool.properties` file) will show the relevant annotations for that entity type, thereby enabling the user to see where problems are occurring.

3.21.2 Standalone mode

Alternatively, the tool can be run in standalone mode, using the following commands:

- To process the corpus, issue the command
`gate -e -generate corpusname`
(where 'corpusname' is the name of the corpus)
- To run in Stored mode, issue the command
`gate -e [-verbose] -marked_stored corpusname`
- To run in Current mode, issue the command
`gate -e [-verbose] -marked_clean corpusname`
- To run in Default mode, issue the command
`gate -e [-verbose] corpusname`

The tool can be run in verbose mode for any of these options using the [-verbose] flag. The results can be piped to an html file and viewed with an internet browser.

3.21.3 How to define the properties of the benchmark tool

The properties of the benchmark tool are defined in the file `corpus_tool.properties`, which should be located in the directory from which GATE is run (usually `gate/build` or `gate/bin`).

The following properties should be set:

- the threshold for the verbose mode (by default this is set to 0.5);
- the name of the annotation set containing the human-marked annotations (`annotSetName`);
- the name of the annotation set containing the system-generated annotations (`outputSetName`);
- the annotation types to be considered (`annotTypes`).

An example file is shown below:

```
threshold=0.7
annotSetName=Key
outputSetName=ANNIE
annotTypes=Person;Organization;Location;Date;Address;Money
```

3.22 [D] Write JAPE Grammars

JAPE is a language for writing regular expressions over annotations, and for using patterns matched in this way as the basis for creating more annotations. JAPE rules compile into finite state machines. GATE's built-in Information Extraction tools use JAPE (amongst other things). For information on JAPE see:

- chapter 7 describes how to write JAPE rules;
- chapter 8 describes the built-in IE components;
- appendix B describes how JAPE is implemented and formally defines the language's grammar;
- appendix C describes the default Named Entity rules distributed with GATE.

3.23 [F] Embed NLE in other Applications

Embedding GATE-based language processing in other applications is straightforward:

- add `gate.jar` to the CLASSPATH, e.g. `CLASSPATH=/home/hamish/gate/bin/gate.jar`;
- tell Java that the GATE Unicode Kit is an extension (`-Djava.ext.dirs=/home/hamish/gate/bin` for example);
- initialise GATE with `gate.Gate.init()`;
- program to the framework API.

For example, this code will create the ANNIE extraction system:

```
public static void main(String args[]) throws GateException, IOException {
    // initialise the GATE library
    Gate.init();

    // initialise ANNIE
    // create a corpus pipeline controller to run ANNIE with
    annieController =
        (SerialAnalyserController) Factory.createResource(
            "gate.creole.SerialAnalyserController", Factory.newFeatureMap(),
            Factory.newFeatureMap(), "ANNIE_" + Gate.genSym()
```

```

);

// load each PR as defined in ANNIEConstants
for(int i = 0; i < ANNIEConstants.PR_NAMES.length; i++) {
    FeatureMap params = Factory.newFeatureMap(); // use default parameters
    ProcessingResource pr = (ProcessingResource)
        Factory.createResource(ANNIEConstants.PR_NAMES[i], params);

    // add the PR to the pipeline controller
    annieController.add(pr);
} // for each ANNIE PR

```

....

A longer example of embedding ANNIE is available at <http://gate.ac.uk/GateExamples/doc/>.

3.24 [D,F] Add support for a new document format

In order to add a new document format, one needs to extend the `gate.DocumentFormat` class and to implement an abstract method called:

```

public void unpackMarkup(Document doc) throws
DocumentFormatException

```

This method is supposed to implement the functionality of each format reader and to create annotation on the document. Finally the document's old content will be replaced with a new one containing only the text between markups (see the GATE API documentation for more details on this method functionality).

If one needs to add a new textual reader will extend the `gate.corpora.TextualDocumentFormat` and override the `unpackMarkup(doc)` method.

This class needs to be implemented under the Java bean specifications because it will be instantiated by GATE using `Factory.createResource()` method.

The `init()` method that one needs to add and implement is very important because in here the reader defines its means to be selected successfully by GATE. What one need to do is to add some specific information into certain static maps defined in `DocumentFormat` class, that will be used at reader detection time.

After that, a definition of the reader will be placed into the one's `creole.xml` file and the reader will be available to GATE.

We present for the rest of the section a complete three steps example of adding such a reader.

The reader we describe in here is an XML reader.

Step 1

Create a new class called `XmlDocumentFormat` that extends `gate.corpora.TextualDocumentFormat`.

Step 2

Implement the `unpackMarkup(Document doc)` which performs the required functionality for the reader. Add XML detection means in `init()` method:

```
public Resource init() throws ResourceInstantiationException{
    // Register XML mime type
    MimeTypes mime = new MimeTypes("text","xml");
    // Register the class handler for this mime type
    mimeTypeString2ClassHandlerMap.put(mime.getType()+ "/" + mime.getSubtype(),
                                        this);

    // Register the mime type with mime string
    mimeTypeString2MimeTypeMap.put(mime.getType() + "/" + mime.getSubtype(), mime);
    // Register file suffixes for this mime type
    mimeTypeSuffix2MimeTypeMap.put("xml",mime);
    mimeTypeSuffix2MimeTypeMap.put("xhtm",mime);
    mimeTypeSuffix2MimeTypeMap.put("xhtml",mime);
    // Register magic numbers for this mime type
    mimeTypeMagic2MimeTypeMap.put("<?xml",mime);
    // Set the mimeType for this language resource
    setMimeType(mime);
    return this;
} // init()
```

More details about the information from those maps can be found in Section 6.6.1

Step 3

Add the following creole definition in the `creole.xml` document.

```
<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>My XML Document Format</NAME>
  <CLASS>mypackage.XmlDocumentFormat</CLASS>
  <AUTOINSTANCE/>
  <PRIVATE/>
</RESOURCE>
```

More information on the operation of GATE's document format analysers may be found in section 6.6.

3.25 [D] Dump Results to File

There are three main ways to dump out the results of, for example, some language analysis or Information Extraction process running over documents:

1. preserving the original document format, with optional added annotations;
2. in GATE's own XML serialisation format (including all the annotations on the document);
3. by writing your own dump algorithm as a `ProcessingResource`.

This section describes how to use the first two options.

Both types of data export are available in the popup menu triggered by right-clicking on a document in the resources tree (see section 3.4): type 1 is called 'save preserving format' and type 2 is called 'save as XML'.

Selecting the save as XML option leads to a file open dialogue; give the name of the file you want to create, and the whole document and all its data will be exported to that file. If you later create a document from that file, the state will be restored. (**Note:** because GATE's annotation model is richer than that of XML, and because our XML dump implementation sometimes cuts corners⁵, the state may not be identical after restoration. If your intention is to store the state for later use, use a `DataStore` instead.)

The save preserving format option also leads to a file dialogue; give a name and the data you require will be dumped into the file. The difference is that the file will preserve the original format of the source document. You can add annotations to the dump file: if there is a document viewer open in the main resource viewer area (see section 3.4), then any annotations that are selected (i.e. are visible in the table at the bottom of the viewer) will be included in the output dump. This is the best way to use the system to add markup based on some analysis process: select those annotations in the document viewer, save preserving format and you will have a file identical to the original source document with just the annotations you selected added. By default, the added annotations will contain no feature data; if you want the process to also dump features, set the 'Include annotation features...' option in the advanced options dialogue (see section 3.5). Note that GATE's model of annotation allows graph structures, which are difficult to represent in XML (XML is a tree-structured representation format). During the dump process, annotations that cross each other in ways that can't be represented straightforwardly in XML will be discarded, and a warning message printed.

⁵Gorey details: features of annotations and documents in GATE may be any virtually any Java object; serialising arbitrary binary data to XML is not simple; instead we serialise them as strings, and therefore they will be re-loaded as strings.

3.26 [D] Stop GUI ‘Freezing’ on Linux

There is a problem with some versions of Linux that causes the GUI to appear to freeze. The problem occurs when you take some action, like loading a resource or browsing for a file, that pops up a dialogue box. This box sometimes fails to appear in a visible area of the screen, at which point the rest of the GUI waits for you to do something intelligent with the dialogue box, while you wait for the GUI to do something. This is an excellent feature for those without tight deadlines to meet, and the best solution is to stop work and go home for a long while. Alternatively, you can play ‘hunt the dialogue box’.

This feature is available totally free of charge.

3.27 [D] Stop GUI Crashing on Linux

On some configurations of Red Hat 7.0 the GUI crashes on startup. The solution is to limit the initial stack size prior to launch: `ulimit -s 2048`.

3.28 [D] Stop GATE Restoring GUI Sessions/Options

GATE will remember GUI options and the state of the resource tree when it exits. The options are saved by default; the session state is not saved by default. This default behaviour can be changed from the “Advanced” tab of the “Configuration” choice on the “Options” menu.

If a problem occurs and the saved data prevents GATE from starting, you can fix it by deleting the configuration and session data files. These are stored in your home directory, and are called `gate.xml` and `gate.session` or `.gate.xml` and `.gate.session` depending on platform. On Windows your home is:

95, 98, NT: Windows Directory/profiles/username

2000, XP: Windows Drive/Documents and Settings/username

3.29 Work with Unicode

GATE provides various facilities for working with Unicode beyond those that come as default with Java⁶:

1. a Unicode editor with input methods for many languages;
2. use of the input methods in all places where text is edited in the GUI;
3. a development kit for implementing input methods;
4. ability to read diverse character encodings.

1 using the editor:

In the GUI, select ‘Unicode editor’ from the ‘Tools’ menu. This will display an editor window, and, when a language with a custom input method is selected for input (see next section), a virtual keyboard window with the characters of the language assigned to the keys on the keyboard. You can enter data either by typing as normal, or with mouse clicks on the virtual keyboard.

2 configuring input methods:

In the editor and in GATE’s main window, the ‘Options’ menu has an ‘Input methods’ choice. All supported input languages (a superset of the JDK languages) are available here. Note that you need to use a font capable of displaying the language you select. By default GATE will choose a Unicode font if it can find one on the platform you’re running on. Otherwise, select a font manually from the ‘Options’ menu ‘Configuration’ choice.

3 using the development kit:

GUK, the GATE Unicode Kit, is documented at <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/javadoc/guk/package-summary.html>.

4 reading different character encodings:

When you create a document from a URL pointing to textual data in GATE, you have to tell the system what character encoding the text is stored in. By default, GATE will set this parameter to be the empty string. This tells Java to use the default encoding for whatever platform it is running on at the time – e.g. on Western versions of Windows this will be ISO-8859-1, and Eastern ones ISO-8859-9. A popular way to store Unicode documents is in UTF-8, which is a superset of ASCII (but can still store all Unicode data); if you get an error message about document I/O during reading, try setting the encoding to UTF-8, or some other locally popular encoding. (To see a list of available encodings, try opening a document in GATE’s unicode editor – you will be prompted to select an encoding.)

⁶Implemented by Valentin Tablan, Mark Leisher and Markus Kramer. Initial version developed by Mark Leisher.

3.30 Work with Oracle and PostgreSQL

GATE's Oracle layer is documented separately in <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/persistence.pdf>. Note that running an Oracle installation is not for the faint-hearted!

GATE version 2.2 has been adapted to work with Postgres 7.3. The compatibility with PostgreSQL 7.2 has been preserved. Since version 7.3 the Postgres server doesn't downcast from int4 to int2 automatically. However, the JDBC drivers seem to have a bug and send the SMALLINT (aka INT2) parameters as INT (aka INT4). This causes some stored procedures (i.e. all that have input parameters of type INT2) not be recognised. We have fixed this problem by modifying the stored procedures to expose the parameters as INT4 and to manually downcast them inside the stored procedure body.

Please note also the following:

PostgreSQL 7.3 refuses to index values larger than 8Kb/3 (2730 bits). The previous versions probably did the same but without raising an exception.

The only case when such a situation can occur in GATE is when a feature has a TEXTUAL value larger than 2730b. This will be signalled by an exception being raised about the value being too large for the index.

To "solve" this, one can remove the index on the `ft_character_value` field of the `t_feature` table. This will have the usual effects caused by removing an index (incapacity of performing efficient searches).

Chapter 4

CREOLE: the GATE Component Model

... Noam Chomsky's answer in *Secrets, Lies and Democracy* (David Barsamian 1994; Odonian) to "What do you think about the Internet?"

"I think that there are good things about it, but there are also aspects of it that concern and worry me. This is an intuitive response – I can't prove it – but my feeling is that, since people aren't Martians or robots, direct face-to-face contact is an extremely important part of human life. It helps develop self-understanding and the growth of a healthy personality.

"You just have a different relationship to somebody when you're looking at them than you do when you're punching away at a keyboard and some symbols come back. I suspect that extending that form of abstract and remote relationship, instead of direct, personal contact, is going to have unpleasant effects on what people are like. It will diminish their humanity, I think."

Chomsky, quoted at <http://photo.net/wtr/dead-trees/53015.htm>.

The GATE architecture is based on components: reusable chunks of software with well-defined interfaces that may be deployed in a variety of contexts. The design of GATE is based on an analysis of previous work on infrastructure for LE, and of the typical types of software entities found in the fields of NLP and CL (see in particular chapters 4–6 of [Cunningham 00]). Our research suggested that a profitable way to support LE software development was an architecture that breaks down such programs into components of various types. Because LE practice varies very widely (it is, after all, predominantly a research field), the architecture must avoid restricting the sorts of components that developers can plug into the infrastructure. The GATE framework accomplishes this via an adapted version of the *Java Beans* component framework from Sun. Section 4.2 describes Java's component model, Java Beans; section 4.3 describes GATE's extended Beans model.

GATE components may be implemented by a variety of programming languages and databases, but in each case they are represented to the system as a Java class. This class may do nothing other than call the underlying program, or provide an access layer to a database; on the other hand it may implement the whole component.

GATE components are one of three types:

- LanguageResources (LRs) represent entities such as lexicons, corpora or ontologies;
- ProcessingResources (PRs) represent entities that are primarily algorithmic, such as parsers, generators or ngram modellers;
- VisualResources (VRs) represent visualisation and editing components that participate in GUIs.

Section 4.4 discusses the distinction between Language Resources and Processing Resources. Collectively, the set of resources integrated with GATE is known as **CREOLE**: a Collection of REusable Objects for Language Engineering.

In the rest of this chapter:

- section 4.5 describes the lifecycle of GATE components;
- section 4.6 describes how Processing Resources can be grouped into applications;
- section 4.7 describes the relationship between Language Resources and their data stores;
- section 4.8 summarises GATE's set of built-in components.

4.1 The Web and CREOLE

GATE allows resource implementations and Language Resource persistent data to be distributed over the Web, and uses XML for configuration of resources (and GATE itself).

Resource implementations are stored at a URL (when the resources are in the local file system this can be a `file:/` URL). When the URL is given to GATE the `creole.xml` component configuration file is sucked down the pipe and the resource information added to the CREOLE register. When a user requests an instantiation of a resource, the class files are sucked up too, and an object created in the local virtual machine.

Language resource data can be stored in binary serialised form in the local file system, or in an RDBMS like Oracle. In the latter case, communication with the database is over JDBC¹,

¹The Java DataBase Connectivity layer.

allowing the data to be located anywhere on the network (or anywhere you can get Oracle running, that is!).

4.2 Java Beans: a Simple Component Architecture

All GATE resources are *Java Beans*, the Java platform's model of software components. Beans are simply Java classes that obey certain interface conventions. These conventions allow development tools such as GATE, or Borland JBuilder, to manipulate software components without knowing very much about them. The advantage of this is that users of such systems can extend them in diverse ways without having to touch the underlying core of the development tools.

The key parts of the Java Beans specification as used in GATE are:

- accessor and mutator methods for data members are named after those members plus `get` and `set` (meaning that the tool can figure out how to use a member, or *property*, of a bean, from information provided by Java reflection);
- beans must have no-argument constructors (so that tools can construct instances of beans without knowing about complex initialisation parameters).

The rest of this section says a little more about the Beans specification; skip to the next if you're only interested in how it works in GATE.

Quoting from [Campione *et al.* 98] at Sun's Java website:

The JavaBeans API makes it possible to write component software in the Java programming language. Components are self-contained, reusable software units that can be visually composed into composite components, applets, applications, and servlets using visual application builder tools. JavaBean components are known as *Beans*.

In this context we may think of the GATE development environment as a 'builder tool'. While the emphasis in the quoted text is on visual representation of components, note that GATE (and other) beans can also be plugged together 'invisibly'; this is what the framework does and how GATE beans are typically deployed into other applications.

Components expose their features (for example, public methods and events) to builder tools for visual manipulation. A Bean's features are exposed because feature names adhere to specific *design patterns*. A JavaBeans-enabled builder tool can then examine the Bean's patterns, discern its features, and expose those features for visual manipulation. A builder tool maintains Beans in a palette or

toolbox. You can select a Bean from the toolbox, drop it into a form, modify its appearance and behavior, define its interaction with other Beans, and compose it and other Beans into an applet, application, or new Bean. All this can be done without writing a line of code.

In GATE you develop sets of beans that do language processing tasks and then the framework wires them together without any code from you.

- Builder tools discover a Bean's features (that is, its properties, methods, and events) by a process known as *introspection*. Beans support introspection in two ways:
 - By adhering to specific rules, known as *design patterns*, when naming Bean features. The `Introspector` class examines Beans for these design patterns to discover Bean features. The `Introspector` class relies on the core reflection API. . . .

The next section describes GATE's extended beans model.

4.3 The GATE Framework

We can think of the GATE framework as a backplane into which plug beans-based CREOLE components. The user gives the system a list of URLs to search when it starts up, and components at those locations are loaded by the system. (To be precise only their configuration data is loaded to begin with; the actual classes are loaded when the user requests the instantiation of a resource.)

The backplane performs these functions:

- component discovery, bootstrapping, loading and reloading;
- management and visualisation of native data structures for common information types;
- generalised data storage and process execution.

A set of components plus the framework is a deployment unit which can be embedded in another application.

The key task of the development environment is to facilitate constructing components, and viewing and measuring their results.

4.4 Language Resources and Processing Resources

This section describes in more detail the *Language Resource* and *Processing Resource* terminology introduced earlier. If you're happy with these terms you can safely skip this section.

Like other software, LE programs consist of data and algorithms. The current orthodoxy in software development is to model both data and algorithms together, as *objects*². Systems that adopt the new approach are referred to as Object-Oriented (OO), and there are good reasons to believe that OO software is easier to build and maintain than other varieties [Booch 94, Yourdon 96].

In the domain of human language processing R&D, however, the terminology is a little more complex. Language data, in various forms, is of such significance in the field that it is frequently worked on independently of the algorithms that process it. For example: a treebank³ can be developed independently of the parsers that may later be trained from it; a thesaurus can be developed independently of the query expansion or sense tagging mechanisms that may later come to use it. This type of data has come to have its own term, *Language Resources* (LRs) [LREC-1 98], covering many data sources, from lexicons to corpora.

In recognition of this distinction, we will adopt the following terminology:

Language Resource (LR): refers to data-only resources such as lexicons, corpora, thesauri or ontologies. Some LRs come with software (e.g. Wordnet has both a user query interface and C and Prolog APIs), but where this is only a means of accessing the underlying data we will still define such resources as LRs.

Processing Resource (PR): refers to resources whose character is principally programmatic or algorithmic, such as lemmatisers, generators, translators, parsers or speech recognisers. For example, a part-of-speech tagger is best characterised by reference to the process it performs on text. PRs typically *include* LRs, e.g. a tagger often has a lexicon; a word sense disambiguator uses a dictionary or thesaurus.

Additional terminology worthy of note in this context: *language data* refers to LRs which are at their core examples of language in practice, or 'performance data', e.g. corpora of texts or speech recordings (possibly including added descriptive information as markup); *data about language* refers to LRs which are purely descriptive, such as a grammar or lexicon.

PRs can be viewed as algorithms that map between different types of LR, and which typically use LRs in the mapping process. An MT engine, for example, maps a monolingual corpus into a multilingual aligned corpus using lexicons, grammars, etc.⁴

²Older development methods like Jackson Structured Design [Jackson 75] or Structured Analysis [Yourdon 89] kept them largely separate.

³A corpus of texts annotated with syntactic analyses.

⁴This point is due to Wim Peters.

Further support for the PR/LR terminology may be gleaned from the argument in favour of declarative data structures for grammars, knowledge bases, etc. This argument was current in the late 1980s and early 1990s [Gazdar & Mellish 89], partly as a response to what has been seen as the overly procedural nature of previous techniques such as augmented transition networks. Declarative structures represent a separation between data about language and the algorithms that use the data to perform language processing tasks; a similar separation to that used in GATE.

Adopting the PR/LR distinction is a matter of conforming to established domain practice and terminology. It does not imply that we cannot model the domain (or build software to support it) in an Object-Oriented manner; indeed the models in GATE are themselves Object-Oriented.

4.5 The Lifecycle of a CREOLE Resource

CREOLE resources exhibit a variety of forms depending on the perspective they are viewed from. Their implementation is as a Java class plus an XML metadata file living at the same URL. When using the development environment, resources can be loaded and viewed via the resources tree (left pane) and the "create resource" mechanism. When programming with the framework, they are Java objects that are obtained by making calls to GATE's **Factory** class. These various incarnations are the phases of a CREOLE resource's 'lifecycle'. Depending on what sort of task you are using GATE for, you may use resources in any or all of these phases. For example, you may only be interested in getting a graphical view of what GATE's ANNIE Information Extraction system (see chapter 8) does; in this case you will use the GUI to load the ANNIE resources, and load a document, and create an ANNIE application and run it on the document. If, on the other hand, you want to create your own resources, or modify the Java code of an existing resource (as opposed to just modifying its grammar, for example), you will need to deal with all the lifecycle phases.

The various phases may be summarised as:

Creating a new resource from scratch (bootstrapping). To create the binary image of a resource (a Java class in a JAR file), and the XML file that describes the resource to GATE, you need to create the appropriate `.java` file(s), compile them and package them as a `.jar`. The GATE development environment provides a bootstrap tool to start this process – see section 3.7. Alternatively you can simply copy code from an existing resource.

Instantiating a resource in the framework. To create a resource in your own Java code, use GATE's **Factory** class (this takes care of parameterising the resource, restoring it from a database where appropriate, etc. etc.). Section 3.8 describes how to do this.

Loading a resource in the development environment. To load a resource in the development environment, use the various “New ... resource” options from the **File** menu and elsewhere. See section 3.9.

Resource configuration and implementation. GATE’s bootstrap tool will create an empty resource that does nothing. In order to achieve the behaviour you require, you’ll need to change the configuration of the resource (by editing the `creole.xml` file) and/or change the Java code that implements the resource. See section 3.10.

More details of the specifics of tasks related to these phases are available in chapter 3.

4.6 Processing Resources and Applications

PRs can be combined into *applications*. Applications model a control strategy for the execution of PRs. In the framework applications are called ‘controllers’ accordingly.

Currently only sequential, or pipeline, execution is supported. There are two types of pipeline:

Simple pipelines simply group a set of PRs together in order and execute them in turn. The implementing class is called `SerialController`.

Corpus pipelines are specific for LanguageAnalysers – PRs that are applied to documents and corpora. A corpus pipeline opens each document in the corpus in turn, sets that document as a runtime parameter on each PR, runs all the PRs on the corpus, then closes the document. The implementing class is called `SerialAnalyserController`.

Conditional versions of these controllers are also available. These allow processing resources to be run conditionally on document features. See Section 3.12 for how to use these.

4.7 Language Resources and Datastores

Language Resources can be stored in Data Stores. Data Stores are an abstract model of disk-based persistence, which can be implemented by various types of storage mechanism. Currently two such mechanisms are implemented:

Serial Data Stores are based on Java’s serialisation system, and store data directly into files and directories.

Oracle Data Stores store data into an Oracle RDBMS. For details of how to set up an Oracle DB for GATE, see <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/persistence.pdf>.

PostgreSQL Data Stores store data into a PostgreSQL RDBMS. For details of how to set up a PostgreSQL DB for GATE, see <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/persistence.pdf>.

4.8 Built-in CREOLE Resources

GATE comes with various built-in components:

- Language Resources modelling Documents and Corpora, and various types of Annotation Schema – see chapter 6.
- Processing Resources that are part of the ANNIE system – see chapter 8.
- Visual Resources for viewing and editing corpora, annotations, etc.
- Other miscellaneous resources – see chapter 9.

Contributions to further developments gratefully received (unmarked low-denomination notes preferred). Bugs to santa@northpole.org.

Chapter 5

Visual CREOLE

...neurobiologists still go on openly studying reflexes and looking under the hood, not huddling passively in the trenches. Many of them still keep wondering: how does the inner life arise? Ever puzzled, they oscillate between two major fictions: (1) The brain can be understood; (2) We will never come close. Meanwhile they keep pursuing brain mechanisms, partly from habit, partly out of faith. Their premise: The brain is the organ of the mind. Clearly, this three-pound lump of tissue is the source of our "insight information" about our very being. Somewhere in it there might be a few hidden guidelines for better ways to lead our lives.

Zen and the Brain, James H. Austin, 1998 (p. 6).

This chapter details the other visual resources that can be used in GATE. While these tools were not included as part of earlier releases of GATE, as of GATE version 3.0, they are included as part of the standard release, and are now open source. GAZE, Ontogazetteer and Protégé were all developed by Ontotext, who should be contacted for further information about these components.

5.1 Gazetteer Visual Resource - GAZE

Gaze is a tool for editing the gazetteer lists, definitions and mapping to ontology. It is suitable for use both for Plain/Linear Gazetteers (Default and Hash Gazetteers) and Ontology-enabled Gazetteers (OntoGazetteer). The Gazetteer PR associated with the viewer is reinitialised every time a save operation is performed. Note that GAZE does not scale up to very large lists (we suggest not using it to view over 40,000 entries and not to copy inside more than 10,000 entries).

5.1.1 Running Modes

The running mode depends on the type of gazetteer loaded in the VR. The mode in which Linear/Plain Gazetteers are loaded is called Linear/Plain Mode. In this mode, the Linear Definition is displayed in the left pane, and the Gazetteer List is displayed in the right pane. The Extended/Ontology/Mapping mode is on when the displayed gazetteer is ontology-aware, which means that there exists a mapping between classes in the ontology and lists of phrases. Two more panes are displayed when in this mode. On the top in the left-most pane there is a tree view of the ontology hierarchy, and at the bottom the mapping definition is displayed.

5.1.2 Loading a Gazetteer

To load a gazetteer into the viewer it is necessary to associate the Gaze VR with the gazetteers. Afterwards whenever a gazetteer PR is loaded, Gaze will appear on double-click over the gazetteer in the Processing Resources branch of the Resources Tree.

5.1.3 Linear Definition Pane

This pane displays the nodes of the linear definition, and allows manipulation of the whole definition as a file, as well as the single nodes. Whenever a gazetteer list is modified, its node in the linear definition is coloured in red.

5.1.4 Linear Definition Toolbar

All the functionality explained in this section (New, Load, Save, Save As) is accessible also via File — Linear Definition in the menu bar of Gaze.

New – Pressing New invokes a file dialog where the location of the new definition is specified.

Load – Pressing Load invokes a file dialog, and after locating the new definition it is loaded by pressing Open.

Save – Pressing Save saves the definition to the location from which it has been read.

Save As – Pressing Save As allows another location to be chosen, and the definition saved there.

5.1.5 Operations on Linear Definition Nodes

Double-click node – Double-clicking on a definition node forces the displaying of the gazetteer list of the node in the right-most pane of the viewer.

Insert – On right-click over a node and choosing Insert, a dialog is displayed, requesting List, Major Type, Minor Type and Languages. The mandatory fields are List and Major Type. After pressing OK, a new linear node is added to the definition.

Remove – On right-click over a node and choosing Remove, the selected linear node is removed from the definition.

Edit – On right-click over a node and choosing Edit a dialog is displayed allowing changes of the fields List, Major Type, Minor Type and Languages.

5.1.6 Gazetteer List Pane

The gazetteer list pane has a toolbar with similar to the linear definition's buttons (New, Load, Save, Save As). They work as predicted by their names and as explained in the Linear Definition Pane section, and are also accessible from File / Gazetteer List in the menu bar of Gaze. The only addition is Save All which saves all modified gazetteer lists. The editing of the gazetteer list is as simple as editing a text file. One could use Ctrl+A to select the whole list, Ctrl+C to copy the selected, Ctrl+V to paste it, Del to delete the selected text or a single character, etc.

5.1.7 Mapping Definition Pane

The mapping definition is displayed one mapping node per row. It consists of a gazetteer list, ontology URL, and class id. The content of the gazetteer list in the node is accessible through double-clicking. It is displayed in the Gazetteer List Pane. The toolbar allows the creation of a new definition (New), the loading of an existing one (Load), saving to the same or new location (Save/Save As). The functionality of the toolbar buttons is also available via File.

5.2 Ontogazetteer

The Ontogazetteer, or Hierarchical Gazetteer, is an interface which makes ontologies “visible” in GATE, supporting basic methods for hierarchy management and traversal. In GATE, an ontology is represented at the same level as a document, and has nodes called classes (for consistency with RDFs and DAML+OIL, though they are really just types). The OntoGazetteer

assigns classes rather than major or minor types, and is aware of mappings between lists and class IDs. There are two Visual Resources, one for editing the standard gazetteer lists (including the definition files and the mappings to the ontology), and one for editing the ontology itself.

5.2.1 Gazetteer Lists Editor and Mapper

This is a VR for editing the gazetteer lists, and mapping them to classes in an ontology. It provides load/store/edit for the lists, load/store/edit for the mapping information, loading of ontologies, load/store/edit for the linear definition file, and mapping of the lists file to the major type, minor type and language.

Left pane: A single ontology is visualized in the left pane of the VR. The mapping between a list and a class is displayed by showing the list as a subclass with a different icon. The mapping is specified by drag and drop from the linear definition pane (in the middle) and/or by right click menu.

Middle pane: The middle pane displays the nodes/lines in the linear definition file. By double clicking on a node the corresponding list is opened. Editing of the line/node is done by right clicking and choosing edit: a dialogue appears (lower part of the scheme) allowing the modification of the members of the node.

Right pane: In the right pane a single gazetteer list is displayed. It can be edited and parts of it can be cut/copied/pasted.

5.2.2 Ontogazetteer Editor

This is a VR for editing the class hierarchy of an ontology. it provides storing to and loading from RDF/RDFS, and provides load/edit/store of the class hierarchy of an ontology.

Left pane: The various ontologies loaded are listed here. On double click or right click and edit from the menu the ontology is visualized in the Right pane.

Right pane: Besides the visualization of the class hierarchy of the ontology the following operations are allowed:

- expanding/collapsing parts of the ontology
- adding a class in the hierarchy: by right clicking on the intended parent of the new class and choosing add sub class.
- removing a class: via right clicking on the class and choosing remove.

As a result of this VR, the ontology definition file is affected/alterd.

5.3 Protégé in GATE

Protégé is integrated in GATE so that people with developed Protégé ontologies can use them in GATE (for example in the hierarchical gazetteer), and also so that they can take advantage of being able to read different format ontology files in Protégé.

It is best to download and investigate Protégé (<http://protege.stanford.edu/index.html>) before trying to use it from GATE. In GATE you will have the same Protégé GUI as in the original application and it is the same application embedded with some restrictions - for example, there is no menu or toolbar. You have some of the Protégé menu items in GATE resource pop-up menu.

5.3.1 Opening Protégé projects and creating new ones

To open a Protégé project you have to create a new GATE LR (Language Resource) - Protégé Project. In the field projectName put the file name of Protégé project (it is best to give the full file name). The second parameter is the URL for the Ontotext format ontology file. You can use this parameter to save a Protégé ontology in Ontotext Ontology Editor format.

If you want to create a new project you have to leave the first parameter empty. In this case you will be asked for Protégé project data format during creation. The standard two are "Standard Text Files" and "JDBC Database". In the current installation of Protégé 2000 ver. 1.7 you have a standard plugin (included in the installation) for "RDF Schema" format.

After creation of a Protégé Project LR, you can open it by doubleclicking on resource in the GATE resource tree. You will see the Protégé GUI inside the GATE tabbed pane.

5.3.2 How to Import RDF files in Protégé project

Whenever you load a Protégé project or create an empty one, you can import another project, using the popup menu item "Import?". You will be asked if you want to save changes in the current project. Select the format of the project you have to import. Than you can select files for the import of the data. Protégé RDF format keeps the ontology data in two files - classes file *.RDFS and instances file *.RDF.

5.3.3 How to Save a Protégé project as RDF files

If you do not choose the RDF file format on creation of new ontology or you do not open an RDF project, you can use the popup menu item "Save In Format?" and select "RDF Schema" format.

5.3.4 How to Set the Protégé plugin directory parameter in GATE

The Protégé architecture allows integration of the plugin to extend the functionality of the application. The RDF file format support is integrated in Protégé as a plugin included in the standard installation. You can find all installed plugins in the subdirectory `plugins` of your Protégé installation. Here you can add any other Protégé plugin you may want to have (see <http://protege.stanford.edu/plugins.html>). If the Protégé plugins directory is accessible in GATE on creation of the Protégé project LR, you should see a similar output in the GATE Messages tab:

```
Plugin classpath:  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/query_tab.jar  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/rdf-api.jar  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/rdf_backend.jar  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/standard_extensions.jar  
file:/D:/projects/gate/plugins/xerces.jar
```

Otherwise you will see only "Plugin classpath:" without the list of assigned plugins and maybe some warnings because of some missing plugin.

There are two ways of providing access to this directory when you use Protégé embedded in GATE. The first is to copy the "plugins" directory in the current GATE directory. This is the simple, but not very "clear" way. In this case if you add some plugin in your Protégé installation you should copy this directory every time to your GATE directory to get it there too. The second way is to tell GATE where the Protégé installation directory is so it can find the plugins subdirectory. You can do this by setting the Java VM property: `-Dprotege.dir="protege_installation_directory"` You can see more about this in Section 5.3.6 below.

5.3.5 How to save a Protégé ontology in Ontotext ontology file format

You can display a Protégé ontology using the Ontology Editor tab of the Protégé project LR GUI.

5.3.6 Known problems and bugs

- If you give only the filename on creation of Protégé project instead of full file name:
There is a strange `java.lang.NullPointerException` when you try to load a Protégé project giving only a file name instead of the full file name. You will have the same

exception in a Protégé application outside GATE, so this is not an integration-specific problem. It is best to give the full file name on creation or load of a Protégé project or on import of data files.

- Unable to find Protégé plugin directory:

To gain some Protégé extra functionality, you should have a Protégé plugin directory somewhere and to give the location of this directory to your Protégé application. You can find the Protégé plugin directory as a subdirectory of your Protégé installation (<http://protege.stanford.edu/download.html>) named "plugins". You have to give full path to the Protégé installation. You should add Java VM property: -Dprotege.dir="D:/projects/Protege" where "D:/projects/Protege" is a directory with subdirectory "plugins" in it. Another way is to copy this "plugins" directory in your GATE application directory.

- Save Protégé project error when this project is not shown in the GATE tab pane:

There is a Protégé exception in this case. The Protégé action for saving the project requires an active GUI. So, the simple solution is to doubleclick on resource to show the Protégé GUI in GATE. Then you can use the Protégé specific popup menu actions without problem.

5.4 The Co-reference Editor

The co-reference editor allows co-reference chains (see section 8.7) to be displayed and edited in the GATE GUI. To display the co-reference editor, first open a document in GATE, and then click on the **Co-reference Editor** button in the document viewer.

The combo box at the top of the co-reference editor allows you to choose which annotation set to display co-references for. If an annotation set contains no co-reference data, then the tree below the combo box will just show 'Coreference Data' and the name of the annotation set. However, when co-reference data does exist, a list of all the co-reference chains that are based on annotations in the currently selected set is displayed. The name of each co-reference chain in this list is the same as the text of whichever element in the chain is the longest. It is possible to highlight all the member annotations of any chain by selecting it in the list.

When a co-reference chain is selected, if the mouse is placed over one of its member annotations, then a pop-up box appears, giving the user the option of deleting the item from the chain. If the only item in a chain is deleted, then the chain itself will cease to exist, and it will be removed from the list of chains. If the name of the chain was derived from the item that was deleted, then the chain will be given a new name based on the next longest item in the chain.

A combo box near the top of the co-reference editor allows the user to select an annotation type from the current set. When the **Show** button is selected all the annotations of the

selected type will be highlighted. Now when the mouse pointer is placed over one of those annotations, a pop-up box will appear giving the user the option of adding the annotation to a co-reference chain. The annotation can be added to an existing chain by typing the name of the chain (as shown in the list on the right) in the pop-up box. Alternatively, if the user presses the down cursor key, a list of all the existing annotations appears, together with the option **[New Chain]**. Selecting the **[New Chain]** option will cause a new chain to be created containing the selected annotation as its only element.

Each annotation can only be added to a single chain, but annotations of different types can be added to the same chain, and the same text can appear in more than one chain if it is referenced by two or more annotations.

Chapter 6

Language Resources: Corpora, Documents and Annotations

Sometimes in life you've got to dance like nobody's watching.

...

I think they should introduce 'sleeping' to the Olympics. It would be an excellent field event, in which the 'athletes' (for want of a better word) all lay down in beds, just beyond where the javelins land, and the first one to fall asleep and not wake up for three hours would win gold. I, for one, would be interested in seeing what kind of personality would be suited to sleeping in a competitive environment.

...

Life is a mystery to be lived, not a problem to be solved.

Round Ireland with a Fridge, Tony Hawks, 1998 (pp. 119, 147, 179).

This chapter documents GATE's model of corpora, documents and annotations on documents. Section 6.1 describes the simple attribute/value data model that corpora, documents and annotations all share. Section 6.2, section 6.3 and section 6.4 describe corpora, documents and annotations on documents respectively. Section 6.6 describes GATE's support for diverse document formats, and section 6.7 describes facilities for XML input/output.

6.1 Features: Simple Attribute/Value Data

GATE has a single model for information that describes documents, collections of documents (corpora), and annotations on documents, based on attribute/value pairs. Attribute names are strings; values can be any Java object. The API for accessing this feature data is Java's `Map` interface (part of the Collections API).

6.2 Corpora: Sets of Documents plus Features

A Corpus in GATE is a Java Set whose members are Documents. Both Corpora and Documents are types of LanguageResource (LR); all LRs have a FeatureMap (a Java Map) associated with them that stored attribute/value information about the resource. FeatureMaps are also used to associate arbitrary information with ranges of documents (e.g. pieces of text) via the annotation model (see below).

Documents have a DocumentContent which is a text at present (future versions may add support for audiovisual content) and one or more AnnotationSets which are Java Sets.

6.3 Documents: Content plus Annotations plus Features

Documents are modelled as content plus annotations (see section 6.4) plus features (see section 6.1). The content of a document can be any subclass of DocumentContent.

6.4 Annotations: Directed Acyclic Graphs

Annotations are organised in graphs, which are modelled as Java sets of Annotation. Annotations may be considered as the arcs in the graph; they have a start Node and an end Node, an ID, a type and a FeatureMap. Nodes have pointers into the sources document, e.g. character offsets.

6.4.1 Annotation Schemas

Annotation schemas provide a means to define types of annotations in GATE. GATE uses the XML Schema language supported by W3C for these definitions. When using the development environment to create/edit annotations, a component is available (`gate.gui.SchemaAnnotationEditor`) which is driven by an annotation schema file. This component will constrain the data entry process to ensure that only annotations that correspond to a particular schema are created. (Another component allows unrestricted annotations to be created.)

Schemas are resources just like other GATE components. Below we give some examples of such schemas. Section 3.17 describes how to create new schemas.

```
////////////////////////////////////
// Date schema
////////////////////////////////////
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<schema
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSchema">
  <!-- XSchema deffinition for Date-->
  <element name="Date">
    <complexType>
      <attribute name="kind" use="optional">
        <simpleType>
          <restriction base="string">
            <enumeration value="date"/>
            <enumeration value="time"/>
            <enumeration value="dateTime"/>
          </restriction>
        </simpleType>
      </attribute>
    </complexType>
  </element>
</schema>

////////////////////////////////////
// Person schema
////////////////////////////////////
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<schema
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSchema">
  <!-- XSchema definition for Person-->
  <element name="Person" />
</schema>

////////////////////////////////////
// Address schema
////////////////////////////////////
<?xml version="1.0"?> <schema
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSchema">
  <!-- XSchema deffinition for Address-->
  <element name="Address">
    <complexType>
      <attribute name="kind" use="optional">
        <simpleType>
          <restriction base="string">
            <enumeration value="email"/>
            <enumeration value="url"/>
            <enumeration value="phone"/>
            <enumeration value="ip"/>
          </restriction>
        </simpleType>
      </attribute>
    </complexType>
  </element>
</schema>
```

```

        <enumeration value="street"/>
        <enumeration value="postcode"/>
        <enumeration value="country"/>
        <enumeration value="complete"/>
    </restriction>
</simpleType>
</attribute>
</complexType>
</element>
</schema>

```

6.4.2 Examples of Annotated Documents

This section shows some simple examples of annotated documents.

This material is adapted from [Grishman 97], the TIPSTER Architecture Design document upon which GATE version 1 was based. Version 2 has a similar model, although annotations are now graphs, and instead of multiple spans per annotation each annotation now has a single start/end node pair. The current model is largely compatible with [Bird & Liberman 99], and roughly isomorphic with "stand-off markup" as latterly adopted by the SGML/XML community.

Each example is shown in the form of a table. At the top of the table is the document being annotated; immediately below the line with the document is a ruler showing the position (byte offset) of each character. (**NOTE:** the ruler doesn't scale very well in HTML; for a better picture see the original TIPSTER Architecture Design Document.

Underneath this appear the annotations, one annotation per line. For each annotation is shown its Id, Type, Span (start/end offsets derived from the start/end nodes), and Features. Integers are used as the annotation Ids. The features are shown in the form name = value.

The first example shows a single sentence and the result of three annotation procedures: tokenization with part-of-speech assignment, name recognition, and sentence boundary recognition. Each token has a single feature, its part of speech (pos), using the tag set from the University of Pennsylvania Tree Bank; each name also has a single feature, indicating the type of name: person, company, etc.

Annotations will typically be organized to describe a hierarchical decomposition of a text. A simple illustration would be the decomposition of a sentence into tokens. A more complex case would be a full syntactic analysis, in which a sentence is decomposed into a noun phrase and a verb phrase, a verb phrase into a verb and its complement, etc. down to the level of individual tokens. Such decompositions can be represented by annotations on nested sets of spans. Both of these are illustrated in the second example, which is an elaboration of our first example to include parse information. Each non-terminal node in the parse tree is

Text				
Cyndi savored the soup.				
|0...|5...|10..|15..|20				
Annotations				
Id	Type	SpanStart	Span End	Features
1	token	0	5	pos=NP
2	token	6	13	pos=VBD
3	token	14	17	pos=DT
4	token	18	22	pos=NN
5	token	22	23	
6	name	0	5	name_type=person
7	sentence	0	23	

Table 6.1: Result of annotation on a single sentence

Text				
Cyndi savored the soup.				
|0...|5...|10..|15..|20				
Annotations				
Id	Type	SpanStart	Span End	Features
1	token	0	5	pos=NP
2	token	6	13	pos=VBD
3	token	14	17	pos=DT
4	token	18	22	pos=NN
5	token	22	23	
6	name	0	5	name_type=person
7	sentence	0	23	constituents=[1],[2],[3].[4],[5]

Table 6.2: Result of annotations including parse information

represented by an annotation of type parse.

In most cases, the hierarchical structure could be recovered from the spans. However, it may be desirable to record this structure directly through a constituents feature whose value is a sequence of annotations representing the immediate constituents of the initial annotation. For the annotations of type parse, the constituents are either non-terminals (other annotations in the parse group) or tokens. For the sentence annotation, the constituents feature points to the constituent tokens. A reference to another annotation is represented in the table as "[Annotation Id]"; for example, "[3]" represents a reference to annotation 3. Where the value of an feature is a sequence of items, these items are separated by commas. No special operations are provided in the current architecture for manipulating constituents. At a less esoteric level, annotations can be used to record the overall structure of documents, including in particular documents which have structured headers, as is shown in the third

Text				
To: All Barnyard Animals				
|0...|5...|10..|15..|20				
From: Chicken Little				
|25...|30...|35..|40..|45				
Date: November 10,1194				
|50...|55...|60..|65..				
Subject: Descending Firmament				
|70...|75...|80..|85..|90..|95..				
Priority : Urgent.				
|100...|105...|110..|115..				
The sky is falling. The sky is falling.				
|120...|125...|130..|135..|140...|145..|150.				
Annotations				
Id	Type	SpanStart	Span End	Features
1	Addressee	4	24	
2	Source	31	45	
3	Date	53	69	ddmmyy=101194
4	Subject	78	98	
5	Priority	109	115	
6	Body	116	155	
7	Sentence	116	135	
8	Sentence	136	155	

Table 6.3: Annotation showing overall document structure

example (Table 6.3).

If the Addressee, Source, ... annotations are recorded when the document is indexed for retrieval, it will be possible to perform retrieval selectively on information in particular fields. Our final example (Table 6.4) involves an annotation which effectively modifies the document. The current architecture does not make any specific provision for the modification of the original text. However, some allowance must be made for processes such as spelling correction. This information will be recorded as a correction feature on token annotations and possibly on name annotations:

6.4.3 Viewing and Editing Diverse Annotation Types

To view and edit annotation types, see Section 3.13. To add annotations of a new type, see Section 3.16. To add a new annotation schema, see Section 3.17.

Text				
Topster tackles 2 terrorbytes.				
|0...|5...|10..|15..|20..|25..				
Annotations				
Id	Type	SpanStart	Span End	Features
1	token	0	7	pos=NP correction=TIPSTER
2	token	8	15	pos=VBZ
3	token	16	17	pos=CD
4	token	18	29	pos=NNS correction=terabytes
5	token	29	30	

Table 6.4: Annotation modifying the document

6.5 Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool

The Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool (OCAT) is a GATE plugin, which uses one or more ontologies for annotation. Version 1 of OCAT supports only annotation with information about the ontology class. Future versions will support annotation with instance information and properties. Details of its functionality can be found in Section 10.3.

6.6 Document Formats

The following document formats are supported by GATE:

- Plain Text
- HTML
- SGML
- XML
- RTF
- Email

By default GATE will try and identify the type of the document, then strip and convert any markup into GATE's annotation format. To disable this process, set the `markupAware` parameter on the document to `false`.

When reading a document of one of these types, GATE extracts the text between tags (where such exist) and create a GATE annotation filled as follows:

The name of the tag will constitute the annotation's type, all the tags attributes will materialize in the annotation's features and the annotation will span over the text covered by the tag. A few exceptions of this rule apply for the RTF, Email and Plain Text formats, which will be described later in the input section of these formats.

The text between tags is extracted and appended to the GATE document's content and all annotations created from tags will be placed into a GATE annotation set named "Original markups".

Example:

If the markup is like this:

```
<aTagName attrib1="value1" attrib2="value2" attrib3="value3"> A  
piece of text</aTagName>
```

then the annotation created by GATE will look like:

```
annotation.type = "aTagName";  
annotation.fm={attrib1=value1;attrib2=value2;attrib3=value3};  
annotation.start=startNode;  
annotation.end = endNode;
```

The startNode and endNode are created from offsets refereing the beginning and the end of "A piece of text" in the document's content.

The documents supported by GATE have to be in one of the encodings accepted by Java. The most popular is the "UTF-8" encoding which is also the most storage efficient one for UNICODE. If, when loading a document in GATE the *encoding* parameter is set to "" (the empty string), then the default encoding of the platform will be used.

6.6.1 Detecting the right reader

When opening a document in GATE, the file extension (e.g. `xml`) is important but if not present, GATE uses some other means to detect its type. In order to successfully apply the document creation algorithm described above, GATE needs to detect the proper reader to use for each document format. In order to do that, it takes into consideration (where possible) the information provided by three sources:

- Document's extension
- The web server's content type

- Magic numbers detection

The first represents the extension of a file like (*xml,htm,html,txt,sgm,rtf, etc*), the second represents the HTTP information sent by a web server regarding the content type of the document being send by it (*text/html; text/xml, etc*), and the third one represents certain sequences of chars which are ultimately number sequences. GATE is capable to support multimedia documents, if the right reader is added to the framework. Sometimes, multimedia documents are identified by a signature consisting in a sequence of numbers. Inside GATE they are called magic numbers. For textual documents, certain char sequences form such magic numbers. Examples of magic numbers sequences will be provided in the Input section of each format supported by GATE.

All those tests are applied to each document read, and after that, a voting mechanism decides what is the best reader to associate with the document. There is a degree of priority for all those tests. The document's extension test has the highest priority. If the system is in doubt which reader to choose, then the one associated with document's extension will be selected. The next higher priority is given to the web server's content type and the third one is given to the magic numbers detection. However, any two tests that identify the same mime type, will have the highest priority in deciding the reader that will be used. The web server test is not always successful as there might be documents that are loaded from a local file system, and the magic number detection test is not always applicable. In the next paragraphs we will see how those tests are performed and what is the general mechanism behind reader detection.

The method that detects the proper reader is a static one, and it belongs to the `gate.DocumentFormat` class. It uses the information stored in the maps filled by the `init()` method of each reader. This method comes with three signatures:

```
static public DocumentFormat getDocumentFormat( gate.Document
aGateDocument, URL url)
```

```
static public DocumentFormat getDocumentFormat(gate.Document
aGateDocument, String fileSuffix)
```

```
static public DocumentFormat getDocumentFormat(gate.Document
aGateDocument, MimeType mimeType)
```

The first two methods try to detect the right `MimeType` for the GATE document, and after that, they call the third one to return the reader associate with a `MimeType`. GATE uses the implementation from "http://jigsaw.w3.org" for mime types.

The magic numbers test is performed using the information form `magic2mimeTypeMap` map. Each key from this map, is searched in the first `bufferSize` (the

default value is 2048) chars of text. The method that does this is called `runMagicNumbers(InputStreamReader aReader)` and it belongs to `DocumentFormat` class. More details about it can be found in the GATE API documentation.

In order to activate a reader to perform the unpacking, the creole definition of a GATE document defines a parameter called “markupAware” initialized with a default value of **true**. This parameter, forces GATE to detect a proper reader for the document being read. If no reader is found, the document’s content is load and presented to the user, just like any other text editor (this for textual documents).

The next subsections investigates particularities for each format and will describe the file extensions registered with each document format.

6.6.2 XML

Input

GATE permits the processing of any XML document and offers support for XML namespaces. It benefits the power of Apache’s Xerces parser and also makes use of Sun’s JAXP layer. Changing the XML parser in GATE can be achieved by simply replacing the value of a Java system property (“`javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory`”).

GATE will accept any well formed XML document as input. Although it has the possibility to validate XML documents against DTDs it does not do so because the validating procedure is time consuming and in many cases it issues messages that are annoying for the user.

There is an open problem with the general approach of reading XML, HTML and SGML documents in GATE. As we previously said, the text covered by tags/elements is appended to the GATE document content and a GATE annotation refers to this particular span of text. When appending, in cases such as “`end.</P><P>Start`” it might happen to concatenate the ending word of the previous annotation with the beginning phrase of the annotation currently being created, resulting in a garbage input for GATE processing resources that operate at the text surface.

Let’s take another example in order to better understand the problem :

```
<title>This is a title</title><p>This is a paragraph</p><a
href="#link">Here is an useful link</a>
```

When the markup is transformed to annotations, it is likely that the text from the document’s content will be as follows:

```
This is a titleThis is a paragraphHere is an useful link
```

The annotations created will refer the right parts of the texts but for the GATE's processing resources like (tokenizer, gazetter, etc) which work on this text, this will be a major diaster. Therefore, in order to prevent this problem from happening, GATE checks if it's likely to join words and if this happens then it inserts a space between those words. So, the text will look like this after loaded in GATE:

This is a title This is a paragraph Here is an useful link

There are cases when these words are meant to be joined, but they are just a few. This is why it's an open problem.

The extensions associate with the XML reader are:

- xml
- xhtm
- xhtml

The web server content type associate with xml documents is: *text/xml*.

The magic numbers test searches inside the document for the XML(<?xml version="1.0") signature. It is also able to detect if the XML document uses the semantic described in the GATE document format DTD (see section 6.6.2) or uses other semantics.

Output

GATE is capable to assure persistence for its resources. These layers of persistence are various and they span until database persistence. However, for some purposes, a light and simple level of persistence would be highly appreciated. The types of persistent storage used for Language Resources are:

- Databases (like Oracle);
- Java serialization;
- XML serialization.

We describe the latter case in here.

XML persistence doesn't necessarily preserve all the objects belonging to the annotations, documents or corpora. Their features can be of all kinds of objects, with various layers of nesting. For example, *lists containing lists containing maps, etc*. Serializing these arbitrary data types in XML is not a simple task; GATE does the best it can, and supports native Java types such as Integers and Booleans, but where complex data types are used, information may

be lost (the types will be converted into Strings). GATE provides a full serialization of certain types of features such as collections, strings and numbers. It is possible to serialize only those collections containing strings or numbers. The rest of other features are serialized using their string representation and when read back, they will be all strings instead of being the original objects. Consequences of this might be observed when performing evaluations (see the evaluation section).

When GATE outputs an XML document it may do so in one of two ways:

- When the original document that was imported into GATE was an XML document, GATE can dump that document back into XML (possibly with additional markup added);
- For all document formats, GATE can dump its internal representation of the document into XML.

In the former case, the XML output will be close to the original document. In the latter case, the format is a GATE-specific one which can be read back by the system to recreate all the information that GATE held internally for the document.

In order to understand why there are two types of XML serialization, one needs to understand the structure of a GATE document. GATE allows a graph of annotations that refer to parts of the text. Those annotations are grouped under annotation sets. Because of this structure, sometimes it is impossible to save a document as XML using tags that surround the text referred by the annotation, because tags crossover situations could appear (XML is essentially a tree-based model of information, whereas GATE uses graphs). Therefore, in order to preserve all annotations in a GATE document, a custom type of XML document was developed.

The problem of crossover tags appears with GATE's second option (the preserve format one), which is implemented at the cost of losing certain annotations. The way it is applied in GATE is that it tries to restore the original markup and where it is possible, to add in the same manner annotations produced by GATE.

How to access and make use of the two ways of XML serialization

Save As XML option

This option is available in GATE's GUI in the pop up menu associated with each language resource (document or corpus). Saving a corpus as XML is done by calling save as XML on each document of the corpus. This option saves all the annotations of a document together with their features (applying the restrictions previously discussed), using the GateDocument.dtd :

```
<!ELEMENT GateDocument (GateDocumentFeatures,  
    TextWithNodes, (AnnotationSet+))>
```

```

<!ELEMENT GateDocumentFeatures (Feature+)>
<!ELEMENT Feature (Name, Value)>
<!ELEMENT Name (\#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Value (\#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TextWithNodes (\#PCDATA | Node)*>
<!ELEMENT AnnotationSet (Annotation*)>
<!ATTLIST AnnotationSet Name CDATA \#IMPLIED>
<!ELEMENT Annotation (Feature*)>
<!ATTLIST Annotation Type CDATA \#REQUIRED
                    StartNode CDATA \#REQUIRED
                    EndNode CDATA \#REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT Node EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST Node id CDATA \#REQUIRED>

```

The document is saved under a name chosen by the user and it may have any extension. However, the recommended extension would be “xml”.

Using GATE’s API, this option is available by calling `gate.Document`’s `toXml()` method. This method returns a string which is the XML representation of the document on which the method was called.

Note: It is recommended that the string representation to be saved on the file system using the UTF-8 encoding, as the first line of the string is : `<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>`

Example of such a GATE format document:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<GateDocument>

<!-- The =document’s features-->

<GateDocumentFeatures>
<Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">MimeType</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">text/plain</Value>
</Feature>
<Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">gate.SourceURL</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">file:/G:/tmp/example.txt</Value>
</Feature>
</GateDocumentFeatures>

<!-- The document content area with serialized nodes -->

<TextWithNodes>

```

```

<Node id="0"/>A TEENAGER <Node
id="11"/>yesterday<Node id="20"/> accused his parents of cruelty
by feeding him a daily diet of chips which sent his weight
ballooning to 22st at the age of 12<Node id="146"/>.<Node
id="147"/>
</TextWithNodes>

<!-- The default annotation set -->

<AnnotationSet>
<Annotation Type="Date" StartNode="11"
EndNode="20">
<Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">rule2</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">DateOnlyFinal</Value>
</Feature> <Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">rule1</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">GazDateWords</Value>
</Feature> <Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">kind</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">date</Value>
</Feature> </Annotation> <Annotation Type="Sentence" StartNode="0"
EndNode="147"> </Annotation> <Annotation Type="Split"
StartNode="146" EndNode="147"> <Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">kind</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">internal</Value>
</Feature> </Annotation> <Annotation Type="Lookup" StartNode="11"
EndNode="20"> <Feature>
  <Name className="java.lang.String">majorType</Name>
  <Value className="java.lang.String">date_key</Value>
</Feature> </Annotation>
</AnnotationSet>

<!-- Named annotation set -->

<AnnotationSet Name="Original markups" >
  <Annotation
Type="paragraph" StartNode="0" EndNode="147"> </Annotation>
</AnnotationSet>
</GateDocument>

```

Note: One must know that all features that are not collections containing numbers or strings or that are not numbers or strings are discarded. With this option, GATE does not preserve those features it cannot restore back.

The preserve format option

This option is available in the GATE GUI from the popup menu of the annotations table. If no annotation in this table is selected, then the option will restore the document's original markup. If certain annotations are selected, then the option will attempt to restore the original markup and insert all the selected ones. When an annotation violates the crossed over condition, that annotation is discarded and a message is issued by GATE.

This option makes possible to generate an XML document with tags surrounding the annotation's refereed text and feature saved as attributes. All features which are collections, strings or numbers are saved, and the others are discarded. However, when read back, only the attributes under the GATE namespace (see bellow) are reconstructed back different than the others. That is because GATE does not store in the XML document the information about the features class and for collections the class of the items. So, when read back all features will become strings, except those under the GATE namespace.

One will notice that all generated tags have an attribute called "gateId" under the namespace "http://www.gate.ac.uk". The attribute is used when the document is read back in GATE, in order to restore the annotation's old ID. This feature is needed because it works in close cooperation with another attribute under the same namespace, called "matches". This attribute indicates annotations/tags that refer the same entity¹. They are under this namespace because GATE is sensitive to them and treats them differently than all other elements with their attributes which falls under the general reading algorithm described at the beginning of this section.

The "gateId" under GATE namespace is used to create an annotation which have as ID, the value indicated by this attribute. The "matches" attribute is used to create an ArrayList in which the items will be Integers, representing the ID of annotations that the current one matches.

Example:

If the text being processed is as follows:

```
<Person gate:gateId="23">John</Person> and <Person
gate:gateId="25" gate:matches="23;25;30">John Major</Person> are
the same person.
```

What GATE does when parses this text, is to create two annotations:

```
a1.type = "Person"
a1.ID=Integer(23)
a1.start=<the start offset of
John>
a1.end = <the end offset of John>
```

¹It's not an XML entity but a information extraction named entity

```
a1.featureMap = {}

a2.type="Person"
a2.ID = Integer(25)
a2.start= <the start offset
of John Major>
a2.end = <the end offset of John Major>
a2.featureMap ={matches=[Integer(23); Integer(25); Integer(30)]}
```

Under GATE's API, this option is available by calling `gate.Document's toXml(Set aSetContainingAnnotations)` method. This method returns a string which is the XML representation of the document on which the method was called. If called with `null` as a parameter, then the method will attempt to restore only the original markup. If the parameter is a set that contains annotations, then each annotation is tested against the crossover restriction, and for those found to violate it, a warning will be issued and they will be discarded.

In the next subsections we will show how this options applies to the other formats supported by GATE.

6.6.3 HTML

Input

The parser used to access HTML documents is the one provided by Java. The documents are read and created in GATE the same way as the XML documents.

The extensions associate with the HTML reader are:

- htm
- html

The web server content type associate with html documents is: *text/html*.

The magic numbers test searches inside the document for the HTML(<html>) signature. There are certain HTML documents that do not contain the HTML tag, so the magical numbers test might not hold.

There is a certain degree of customization for HTML documents in that GATE introduces new lines into the document's text content in order to obtain a readable form. The annotations will refer the pieces of text as described in the original document but there will be a few extra new line characters inserted.

After reading H1,H2,H3,H4,H5,H6,TR,CENTER,LI,BR tags, GATE will introduce a new line(NL) char into the text. After a TITLE tag it will introduce two NLs. With P tags, GATE will introduce one NL at the beginning of the paragraph and one at the end of the paragraph. All newly added NLs are not considered to be part of the text contained by the tag.

Output

The Save as XML option works exactly the same for all GATE's documents so there is no particular observation to be made for the HTML formats.

When attempting to preserve the original markup formatting, GATE will generate the document in xhtml. The html document will look the same with any browser after processed by GATE but it will be in another syntax.

6.6.4 SGML

Input

The SGML support in GATE is fairly light as there is no freely available Java SGML parser. GATE uses a light converter attempting to transform the input SGML file into a well formed XML. Because it does not make use of a DTD, the conversion might not be always good. It is advisable to perform a SGML2XML conversion outside the system(using some other specialized tools) before using the SGML document inside GATE.

The extensions associate with the SGML reader are:

- sgm
- sgml

The web server content type associate with xml documents is : *text/sgml*.

There is no magic numbers test for SGML.

Output

When attempting to preserve the original markup formatting, GATE will generate the document as XML because the real input of a SGML document inside GATE is an XML one.

6.6.5 Plain text

Input

When reading a plain text document, GATE attempts to detect its paragraphs and add “paragraph” annotations to the document’s “Original markups” annotation set. It does that by detecting two consecutive NLs. The procedure works for both UNIX like or DOS like text files.

Example:

If the plain text read is as follows:

Paragraph 1. This text belongs to the first paragraph.

Paragraph 2. This text belongs to the second paragraph

then two “paragraph” type annotation will be created in the “Original markups” annotation set (refereing the first and second paragraphs) with an empty feature map.

The extensions associate with the plain text reader are:

- txt
- text

The web server content type associate with plain text documents is: *text/plain*.

There is no magic numbers test for plain text.

Output

When attempting to preserve the original markup formatting, GATE will dump XML markup that surrounds the text refereed.

The procedure described above applies both for plain text and RTF documents.

6.6.6 RTF

Input

Accessing RTF documents is performed by using the Java’s RTF editor kit. It only extracts the document’s text content from the RTF document.

The extension associate with the RTF reader is “*rtf*”.

The web server content type associate with xml documents is : *text/rtf*.

The magic numbers test searches for `{\\rtf1`.

Output

Same as the plain tex output.

6.6.7 Email

Input

GATE is able to read email messages packed in one document (UNIX mailbox format). It detects multiple messages inside such documents and for each message it creates annotations for all the fields composing an e-mail, like date, from, to, subject, etc. The message’s body is analyzed and a paragraph detection is performed (just like in the plain text case) . All annotation created have as type the name of the e-mail’s fields and they are placed in the Original markup annotation set.

Example:

From someone@zzz.zzz.zzz Wed Sep 6 10:35:50 2000

Date: Wed, 6 Sep2000 10:35:49 +0100 (BST)

From: forename1 surname2 <someone1@yyy.yyy.xxx>

To: forename2 surname2 <someone2@ddd.dddd.dd.dd>

Subject: A subject

Message-ID: <Pine.SOL.3.91.1000906103251.26010A-100000@servername>

MIME-Version: 1.0

Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII

This text belongs to the e-mail body....

This is a paragraph in the body of the e-mail

This is another paragraph.

GATE attempts to detect lines such “*From someone@zzz.zzz.zzz Wed Sep 6 10:35:50 2000*” in the e-mail text. Those lines separate e-mail messages contained in one file. After that, for each field in the e-mail message annotation are created as follows:

The annotation type will be the name of the field, the feature map will be empty and the annotation will span from the end of the filed until the end of the line containing the e-mail field.

Example:

```
a1.type = "date" a1 spans between the two ^ ^. Date: ^ Wed,
6Sep2000 10:35:49 +0100 (BST) ^
```

```
a2.type = "from"; a2 spans between the two ^ ^. From: ^ forename1
surname2 <someone1@yyy.yyy.xxx> ^
```

The extensions associate with the email reader are:

- eml
- email
- mail

The web server content type associate with plain text documents is: *text/email*.

The magic numbers test searches for keywords like *Subject;*,etc.

Output

Same as plain text output.

6.7 XML Input/Output

Support for input from and output to XML is described in section 6.6.2. In short:

- GATE will read any well-formed XML document (it does not attempt to validate XML documents). Markup will by default be converted into native GATE format.
- GATE will write back into XML in one of two ways:

1. Preserving the original format and adding selected markup (for example to add the results of some language analysis process to the document).
2. In GATE's own XML serialisation format, which encodes all the data in a GATE Document (as far as this is possible within a tree-structured paradigm – for 100% non-lossy data storage use GATE's RDBMS or binary serialisation facilities – see section 4.7).

When using the GATE framework, object representations of XML documents such as `DOM` or `jDOM`, or query and transformation languages such as `X-Path` or `XSLT`, may be used in parallel with GATE's own Document representation (`gate.Document`) without conflicts.

Chapter 7

JAPE: Regular Expressions Over Annotations

If Osama bin Laden did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him. For the past four years, his name has been invoked whenever a US president has sought to increase the defence budget or wriggle out of arms control treaties. He has been used to justify even President Bush's missile defence programme, though neither he nor his associates are known to possess anything approaching ballistic missile technology. Now he has become the personification of evil required to launch a crusade for good: the face behind the faceless terror.

The closer you look, the weaker the case against Bin Laden becomes. While the terrorists who inflicted Tuesday's dreadful wound may have been inspired by him, there is, as yet, no evidence that they were instructed by him. Bin Laden's presumed guilt appears to rest on the supposition that he is the sort of man who would have done it. But his culpability is irrelevant: his usefulness to western governments lies in his power to terrify. When billions of pounds of military spending are at stake, rogue states and terrorist warlords become assets precisely because they are liabilities.

The need for dissent, George Monbiot, The Guardian, Tuesday September 18, 2001.

This chapter describes JAPE – a Java Annotation Patterns Engine. JAPE provides finite state transduction over annotations based on regular expressions. JAPE is a version of CPSL – Common Pattern Specification Language¹.

JAPE allows you to recognise regular expressions in annotations on documents. Hang on, there's something wrong here: a regular language can only describe sets of strings, not graphs,

¹A good description of the original version of this language is in Doug Appelt's TextPro manual. Doug was a great help to us in implementing JAPE. Thanks Doug!

and GATE's model of annotations is based on graphs. Hmm. Another way of saying this: typically, regular expressions are applied to character strings, a simple linear sequence of items, but here we are applying them to a much more complex data structure. The result is that in certain cases the matching process is non-deterministic (i.e. the results are dependent on random factors like the addresses at which data is stored in the virtual machine): when there is structure in the graph being matched that requires more than the power of a regular automaton to recognise, JAPE chooses an alternative arbitrarily. However, this is not the bad news that it seems to be, as it turns out that in many useful cases the data stored in annotation graphs in GATE (and other language processing systems) can be regarded as simple sequences, and matched deterministically with regular expressions.

A JAPE grammar consists of a set of phases, each of which consists of a set of pattern/action rules. The phases run sequentially and constitute a cascade of finite state transducers over annotations. The left-hand-side (LHS) of the rules consist of an annotation pattern that may contain regular expression operators (e.g. *, ?, +). The right-hand-side (RHS) consists of annotation manipulation statements. Annotations matched on the LHS of a rule may be referred to on the RHS by means of labels that are attached to pattern elements.

At the beginning of each grammar, several options can be set:

- Control - this defines the method of rule matching (see Section 7.2)
- Debug - when set to true, if the grammar is running in Appelt mode and there is more than one possible match, the conflicts will be displayed on the standard output. See also Section 7.3.

Input annotations must also be defined at the start of each grammar. If no annotations are defined, the default will be Token, SpaceToken and Lookup (i.e. only these annotations will be considered when attempting a match). See Section 7.6 for more details.

There are 3 main ways in which the pattern can be specified:

- specify a string of text, e.g. {Token.string == "of"}
- specify an annotation previously assigned from a gazetteer, tokeniser, or other module, e.g. {Lookup}
- specify the attributes (and values) of an annotation), e.g. {Token.kind == number}

Macros can also be used in the LHS of rules. This means that instead of expressing the information in the rule, it is specified in a macro, which can then be called in the rule. The reason for this is simply to avoid having to repeat the same information in several rules. Macros can themselves be used inside other macros.

The same operators can be used as for the tokeniser rules, i.e.

```
|
*
?
+
```

The pattern description is followed by a label for the annotation. A label is denoted by a preceding semi-colon; in the example below, the label is `:location`.

The RHS of the rule contains information about the annotation. Information about the annotation is transferred from the LHS of the rule using the label just described, and annotated with the entity type (which follows it). Finally, attributes and their corresponding values are added to the annotation. Alternatively, the RHS of the rule can contain Java code to create or manipulate annotations.

In the simple example below, the pattern described will be awarded an annotation of type “Enamex” (because it is an entity name). This annotation will have the attribute “kind”, with value “location”, and the attribute “rule”, with value “GazLocation”. (The purpose of the “rule” attribute is simply to ease the process of manual rule validation).

```
Rule: GazLocation
(
{Lookup.majorType == location}
)
:location -->
  :location.Enamex = {kind="location", rule=GazLocation}
```

It is also possible to have more than one pattern and corresponding action, as shown in the rule below. On the LHS, each pattern is enclosed in a set of round brackets and has a unique label; on the RHS, each label is associated with an action. In this example, the Lookup annotation is labelled “jobtitle” and is given the new annotation JobTitle; the TempPerson annotation is labelled “person” and is given the new annotation “Person”.

```
Rule: PersonJobTitle
Priority: 20

(
  {Lookup.majorType == jobtitle}
):jobtitle
(
  {TempPerson}
):person
-->
  :jobtitle.JobTitle = {rule = "PersonJobTitle"}
  :person.Person = {kind = "personName", rule = "PersonJobTitle"},
```


Similarly, labelled patterns can be nested, as in the example below, where the whole pattern is annotated as Person, but within the pattern, the jobtitle is annotated as JobTitle.

```
Rule: PersonJobTitle2
Priority: 20

(
  (
    {Lookup.majorType == jobtitle}
  ):jobtitle
  {TempPerson}
):person
-->
  :jobtitle.JobTitle = {rule = "PersonJobTitle"}
  :person.Person = {kind = "personName", rule = "PersonJobTitle"},
```

Grammar rules can essentially be of two types. The first type of rule involves no gazetteer lookup, but can be defined using a small set of possible formats. In general, these are fairly straightforward and offer little potential for ambiguity.

The second type of rules rely more heavily on the gazetteer lists, and cover a much wider range of possibilities. This not only means that many rules may be needed to describe all situations, but that there is a much greater potential for ambiguity. This leads to the necessity for rule ordering and prioritisation, as will be discussed below.

For example, a single rule is sufficient to identify an IP address, because there is only one basic format - a series of numbers, each set connected by a dot. The rule for this is given below²:

```
Rule: IPAddress
(
  {Token.kind == number}
  {Token.string == "."}
  {Token.kind == number}
  {Token.string == "."}
  {Token.kind == number}
  {Token.string == "."}
  {Token.kind == number}
)
:ipAddress -->
:ipAddress.Address = {kind = "ipAddress"}
```

²We might be more specific and state the possible lengths of the number, but within the confines of this project we currently have no need to, because there is no ambiguity with anything else

To identify a date or time, there are many possible variations, and so many rules are needed. For example, the same date information can appear in the following formats (amongst others):

Wed, 10/7/00
Wed, 10/July/00
Wed, 10 July, 2000
Wed 10th of July, 2000
Wed. July 10th, 2000
Wed 10 July 2000

Different types of date can also be expressed. For example, the following would also be classified as date entities:

the late '80s
Monday
St. Andrew's Day
99 BC
mid-November
1980-81
from March to April

This also means there is a much greater potential for ambiguity. For example, many of the months of the year can also be girls' Christian names (e.g. May, June). This means that contextual information may be needed to disambiguate them, or we may have to guess which is more likely, based on frequency. For example, while "Friday" could be a person's name (as in "Man Friday"), it is much more likely to be a day of the week.

7.1 Use of Context

Context can be dealt with in the grammar rules in the following way. The pattern to be annotated is always enclosed by a set of round brackets. If preceding context is to be included in the rule, this is placed before this set of brackets. This context is described in exactly the same way as the pattern to be matched. If context following the pattern needs to be included, it is placed after the label given to the annotation. Context is used where a pattern should only be recognised if it occurs in a certain situation, but the context itself does not form part of the pattern to be annotated.

For example, the following rule for Time (assuming an appropriate macro for "year") would mean that a year would only be recognised if it occurs preceded by the words "in" or "by":

```
Rule: YearContext1
```

```
({Token.string == "in"}|
 {Token.string == "by"}
)
(YEAR)
:date -->
:date.Timex = {kind = "date", rule = "YearContext1"}
```

Similarly, the following rule (assuming an appropriate macro for “email”) would mean that an email address would only be recognised if it occurred inside angled brackets (which would not themselves form part of the entity):

```
Rule: Emailaddress1
({Token.string == '<'})
(
 (EMAIL)
)
:email
({Token.string == '>'})
-->
:email.Address= {kind = "email", rule = "Emailaddress1"}
```

7.2 Use of Priority

Each grammar has 3 possible control styles: “brill”, “first” and “appelt”. This is specified at the beginning of the grammar. The brill style means that when more than one rule matches the same region of the document, they are all fired. The result of this is that a segment of text could be allocated more than one entity type, and that no priority ordering is necessary.

With the “first” style, a rule fires for the first match that’s found. This makes it inappropriate for rules that end in “+” or “?” or “*”. Once a match is found the rule is fired; it does not attempt to get a longer match (as the other two styles do).

With the appelt style, only one rule can be fired for the same region of text, according to a set of priority rules. Priority operates in the following way.

1. From all the rules that match a region of the document starting at some point X, the one which matches the longest region is fired.
2. If more than one rule matches the same region, the one with the highest priority is fired

3. If there is more than one rule with the same priority, the one defined earlier in the grammar is fired.

An optional priority declaration is associated with each rule, which should be a positive integer. The higher the number, the greater the priority. By default (if the priority declaration is missing) all rules have the priority -1 (i.e. the lowest priority).

For example, the following two rules for location could potentially match the same text.

```
Rule: Location1
Priority: 25

(
  ({Lookup.majorType == loc_key, Lookup.minorType == pre}
   {SpaceToken})?
  {Lookup.majorType == location}
  ({SpaceToken}
   {Lookup.majorType == loc_key, Lookup.minorType == post})?
)
:locName -->
  :locName.Location = {kind = "location", rule = "Location1"}
```

```
Rule: GazLocation
Priority: 20
(
  ({Lookup.majorType == location}):location
)
--> :location.Name = {kind = "location", rule=GazLocation}
```

Assume we have the text “China sea”, that “China” is defined in the gazetteer as “location”, and that sea is defined as a “loc_key” of type “post”. In this case, rule Location1 would apply, because it matches a longer region of text starting at the same point (“China sea”, as opposed to just “China”). Now assume we just have the text “China”. In this case, both rules could be fired, but the priority for Location1 is highest, so it will take precedence. In this case, since both rules produce the same annotation, so it is not so important which rule is fired, but this is not always the case.

One important point of which to be aware is that prioritisation only operates within a single grammar. Although we could make priority global by having all the rules in a single grammar, this is not ideal due to other considerations. Instead, we currently combine all the rules for each entity type in a single grammar. An index file (main.jape) is used to define which grammars should be used, and in which order they should be fired.

7.3 Useful tricks

Although the JAPE language has some limitations as to how rules and patterns can be expressed, there are some useful tricks to overcome these problems.

- Using priority to resolve ambiguity. If the Appelt style of matching is selected, rule priority operates in the following way.
 1. Length of rule – a rule matching a longer pattern will fire first.
 2. Explicit priority declaration. Use the optional Priority function to assign a ranking. The higher the number, the higher the priority. If no priority is stated, the default is -1.
 3. Order of rules. In the case where the above two factors do not distinguish between two rules, the order in which the rules are stated applies. Rules stated first have higher priority.

Because priority can only operate within a single grammar, this can be a problem for dealing with ambiguity issues. One solution to this is to create a temporary set of annotations in initial grammars, and then manipulate this temporary set in one or more later phases (for example, by converting temporary annotations from different phases into permanent annotations in a single final phase. See the default set of grammars for an example of this.

- Negative operator. A negative operator cannot be specified as such. One solution to this is to create a “negative rule” which has higher priority than the matching “positive rule”. The style of matching must be Appelt for this to work. To create a negative rule, simply state on the LHS of the rule the pattern that should NOT be matched, and on the RHS do nothing. In this way, the positive rule cannot be fired if the negative pattern matches, and vice versa, which has the same end result as using a negative operator. A useful variation for developers is to create a dummy annotation on the RHS of the negative rule, rather than to do nothing, and to give the dummy annotation a rule feature. In this way, it is obvious that the negative rule has fired. Alternatively, use Java code on the RHS to print a message when the rule fires. An example of a matching negative and positive rule follows. Here, we want a rule which matches a surname followed by a comma and a set of initials. But we want to specify that the initials shouldn’t have the POS category PRP (personal pronoun). So we specify a negative rule that will fire if the PRP category exists, thereby preventing the positive rule from firing.

```
Rule: NotPersonReverse
Priority: 20
// we don't want to match ''Jones, I''
(
  {Token.category == NNP}
```

```

    {Token.string == ","}
    {Token.category == PRP}
  )
  :foo
  -->
  {}

Rule:   PersonReverse
Priority: 5
// we want to match ‘‘Jones, F.W.’’

(
  {Token.category == NNP}
  {Token.string == ","}
  (INITIALS)?
)
:person -->

```

- Matching special characters. To specify a single or double quote as a string, precede it with a backslash, e.g.

```
{Token.string=="\""}

```

will match a double quote. For other special characters, such as “\$”, enclose it in double quotes, e.g.

```
{Token.category == "PRP$"}

```

- Referring to previous annotations. An annotation generated in one phase can be referred to in a later phase, in exactly the same way as any other kind of annotation (by specifying the name of the annotation within curly braces). The features and values can be referred to or omitted, as with all other annotations. Make sure that if the Input specification is used in the grammar, that the annotation to be referred to is included in the list.
- Using context. Specify left or right context around a pattern by enclosing it in round brackets outside the round brackets of the pattern. In the example below, the context “in” must precede the location to be annotated. Only the location will be annotated, but it is important to remember that context is consumed by the rule, so it cannot be reused in another rule within the same phase. So, for example, right context cannot be used as left context for another rule.

```

Rule:InLoc1
// in PARIS
(

```

```

    {Token.string == "in"}
  )
  (
    {Lookup.majorType == location}
  )
  :locName

```

- Debug. Add the following to the options at the top of the grammar.

```
Options: control = appelt debug = true
```

- Avoid conflicts. If two possible ways of matching are found for the same text string, a conflict can arise. Normally this is handled by the priority mechanism (test length, rule priority and finally rule precedence). If all these are equal, Jape will simply choose a match at random and fire it. This leads to non-deterministic behaviour, which should be avoided.
- Using Java code on the RHS. If you want to be flash, you can use any Java code you like on the RHS of the rule. This is useful for feature percolation (see below), for deleting previous annotations, measuring length of strings, and performing alternative operations depending on particular features of the annotation. See 7.5 for more details.
- Feature percolation. To copy features from previous annotations, where the value of the feature is unknown, some simple Java code can be used. See Section 7.5 for a more detailed explanation of this.
- Adding a feature to the document. Instead of adding a feature to an annotation, a feature can be added to the document as a whole. For example, the following code on the RHS would add the feature “texttype” with value “sport” to the document.

```
doc.getFeatures().put("texttype", 'sport');
```

7.4 Ontology aware grammar transduction

GATE supports two different methods for ontology aware grammar transduction. Firstly it is possible to use the `ontology` feature both in grammars and annotations, while using the default transducer. Secondly it is possible to use an ontology aware transducer by passing an ontology language resource to one of the subsumes methods in `SimpleFeatureMapImpl`. This second strategy does not check for ontology features, which will make the writing of grammars easier, as there is no need to specify `ontology` when writing them. More information about the ontology-aware transducer can be found in Section 10.2.

7.5 Using Java code in JAPE rules

The RHS of a JAPE rule can consist of any Java code. This is useful for removing temporary annotations and for percolating and manipulating features from previous annotations. In the example below

The first rule below shows a rule which matches a first person name, e.g. “Fred”, and adds a gender feature depending on the value of the `minorType` from the gazetteer list in which the name was found. We first get the bindings associated with the person label (i.e. the Lookup annotation). We then create a new annotation called “personAnn” which contains this annotation, and create a new `FeatureMap` to enable us to add features. Then we get the `minorType` features (and its value) from the `personAnn` annotation (in this case, the feature will be “gender” and the value will be “male”), and add this value to a new feature called “gender”. We create another feature “rule” with value “FirstName”. Finally, we add all the features to a new annotation “FirstPerson” which attaches to the same nodes as the original “person” binding.

Note that `inputAS` and `outputAS` represent the input and output annotation set. Normally, these would be the same (by default when using ANNIE, these will be the “Default” annotation set). Since the user is at liberty to change the input and output annotation sets in the parameters of the JAPE transducer at runtime, it cannot be guaranteed that the input and output annotation sets will be the same, and therefore we must specify the annotation set we are referring to.

Rule: `FirstName`

```
(
  {Lookup.majorType == person_first}
):person
-->
{
  gate.AnnotationSet person = (gate.AnnotationSet)bindings.get("person");
  gate.Annotation personAnn = (gate.Annotation)person.iterator().next();
  gate.FeatureMap features = Factory.newFeatureMap();
  features.put("gender", personAnn.getFeatures().get("minorType"));
  features.put("rule", "FirstName");
  outputAS.add(person.firstNode(), person.lastNode(), "FirstPerson",
  features);
}
```

The second rule (contained in a subsequent grammar phase) makes use of annotations produced by the first rule described above. Instead of percolating the `minorType` from the annotation produced by the gazetteer lookup, this time it percolates the feature from the

annotation produced by the previous grammar rule. So here it gets the “gender” feature value from the “FirstPerson” annotation, and adds it to a new feature (again called “gender” for convenience), which is added to the new annotation (in outputAS) “TempPerson”. At the end of this rule, the existing input annotations (from inputAS) are removed because they are no longer needed. Note that in the previous rule, the existing annotations were not removed, because it is possible they might be needed later on in another grammar phase.

```
Rule: GazPersonFirst
(
  {FirstPerson}
)
:person
-->
{
gate.AnnotationSet person = (gate.AnnotationSet)bindings.get("person");
gate.Annotation personAnn = (gate.Annotation)person.iterator().next();
gate.FeatureMap features = Factory.newFeatureMap();

features.put("gender", personAnn.getFeatures().get("gender"));
features.put("rule", "GazPersonFirst");
outputAS.add(person.firstChild(), person.lastChild(), "TempPerson",
features);
inputAS.removeAll(person);
}
```

7.5.1 Adding a feature to the document

The following example code shows how to add the feature “genre” with value “email” to the document, using JAVA code on the RHS of a rule:

```
Rule: Email
Priority: 150

(
  {message}
)
-->
{
doc.getFeatures().put("genre", "email");
}
```

7.6 Optimising for speed

The way in which grammars are designed can have a huge impact on the processing speed. Some simple tricks to keep the processing as fast as possible are:

- avoid the use of the * and + operators. Replace them with ? where possible. For example, instead of

```
{Token}*
```

use

```
{Token}? {Token}? {Token}?
```

if you can predict that you won't need to recognise a string of Tokens longer than 3.

- avoid specifying unnecessary elements such as SpaceTokens where you can. To do this, use the Input specification at the beginning of the grammar to stipulate the annotations that need to be considered. If no Input specification is used, all annotations will be considered (so, for example, you cannot match two tokens separated by a space unless you specify the SpaceToken in the pattern). If, however, you specify Tokens but not SpaceTokens in the Input, SpaceTokens do not have to be mentioned in the pattern to be recognised. If, for example, there is only one rule in a phase that requires SpaceTokens to be specified, it may be judicious to move that rule to a separate phase where the SpaceToken can be specified as Input.

7.7 The JAPE Debugger

The Jape debugger helps to find errors in Jape programs enabling the user to see in detail how a Jape rule works when applied to a particular range of text. It was written by Ontos, who also provided the original version of this documentation. The debugger allows the user to select a particular part of the text, and then look at the detailed history of processing. This will enable them to see which rules were matched and which were not, and also why particular rules were or were not matched. It is also possible to set breakpoints for particular rules, enabling the user to see how the rule was matched, and what annotations were created.

The Jape debugger could be useful in situations where the old simple DEBUG OUTPUT method does not help. For example when:

- A Rule LHS has not been matched.
- Text did not match the expected template of a rule.

- The rule was overridden by another conflicting rule.
- Annotations are created, but it is not possible to tell which rule created them.

7.7.1 Debugger GUI

The layout of the JAPE-debugger user interface is shown in Figure 7.1.

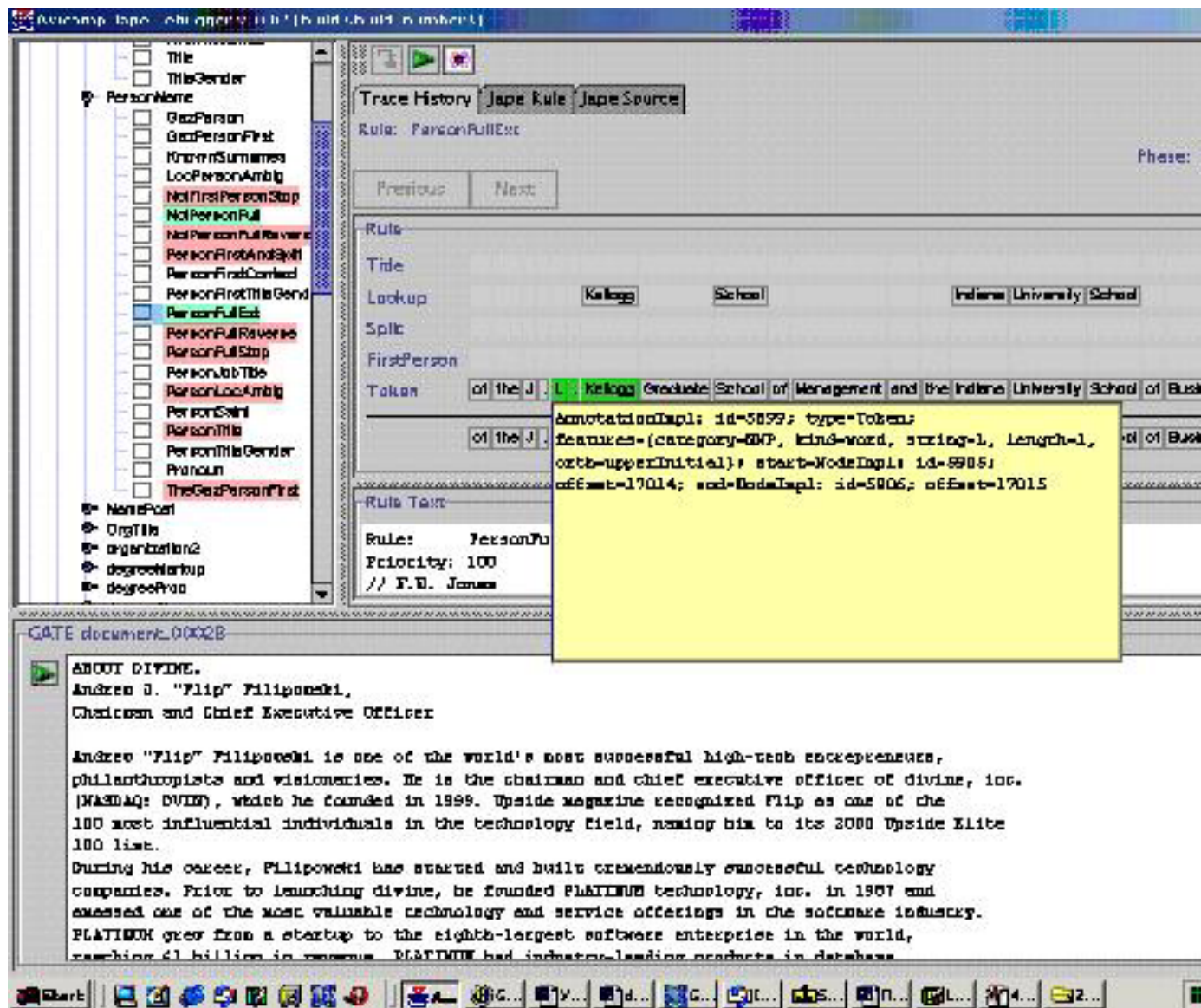


Figure 7.1: The JAPE Debugger User Interface

The debuggers main frame consists of the following primary components:

- Resources tree (appears in the left side of the main frame and contains all the resources available within the current GATE session).
- Debugging panel (located at the center of the main frame and contains three tabs providing all necessary debugging information).
- Document panel (provides you with the document on which you are currently debugging).

7.7.2 Using the Debugger

In most situations you will use the debugger in trace mode using the following steps:

- initialize JAPE-debugger from the GATE menu (Tools / JAPE Debugger);
- run a GATE serial controller (This can be done either from GATE or from the debugger. Note: for performance reasons, the debugger doesn't gather matching information when it's not running, so run GATE serial controller after you open the debugger window);
- select the part of the text that is interesting for debugging purposes, and press the button at the left of the text to update the view of the debugger.

After these steps the following information becomes available. In the Resources tree some of the rules become highlighted in different colors:

- Green means that the rule has matched successfully.
- Yellow means that it matched, but was overridden by another rule.
- Red means that the rule tried to match, but failed.

Trace history is the main debugging tab in Debugging panel. It contains the source of the JAPE rule currently selected, and the selected text in the document panel. All the inputs are shown, and matched inputs are highlighted in green. Annotations, which made the rule fail, are highlighted in red. If a rule tried to match more than one time on the selected text interval, buttons on the top of the panel (Previous and Next) become enabled, and allow one to observe all the matching attempts of the rule. Clicking on any of the inputs shows an annotation window, and the tool tip of the matched words gives the template in the rule.

Step by Step Example

To give an idea of how to use debugger for fixing bugs, let's consider the following example. For instance, there is a rule named `PersonFullExt`, which should find person names: A. B.

Dick, J. F. Kennedy and so on, and create an annotation Person. To test the rule, we run GATE on a text fragment containing the following words: the J.L. Kellogg Graduate School, so we would expect that the part of the text J. L. Kellogg should get an annotation Person. Unfortunately, we encounter a problem (because only L. Kellogg was matched), so we decide to use the debugger to find the reason for this unexpected behavior. With JAPE-debugger, it is possible to observe everything needed during for finding and fixing the error.

The appropriate screenshot is shown in Figure 7.2.

As you can see, the rule NotPersonFull matched the text the J, so the rule PersonFullExt could start matching only after the pointer has moved to the token .. Without the debugger, it wouldnt be so easy to find the reason for this error, because the rule NotPersonFull doesnt create any annotations.

An additional feature of the debugger is the availability of debugging with breakpoints (Jape Rule Tab). After setting a breakpoint on a given rule (in our case it is the rule named TheOrgXBase), the GATE transducer will be interrupted at the breakpoint, and in the document panel the text that is currently matched by the rule (it is highlighted in cyan) will be displayed. In the tab, a special table representation of the rule (with what it matches on the left side), and the history of annotations created by this rule, will be displayed, as in Figure 7.3.

7.7.3 Known Bugs

1. Debugger doesnt see processing resource reinitialization. A possible workaround is to close and open the resource again.

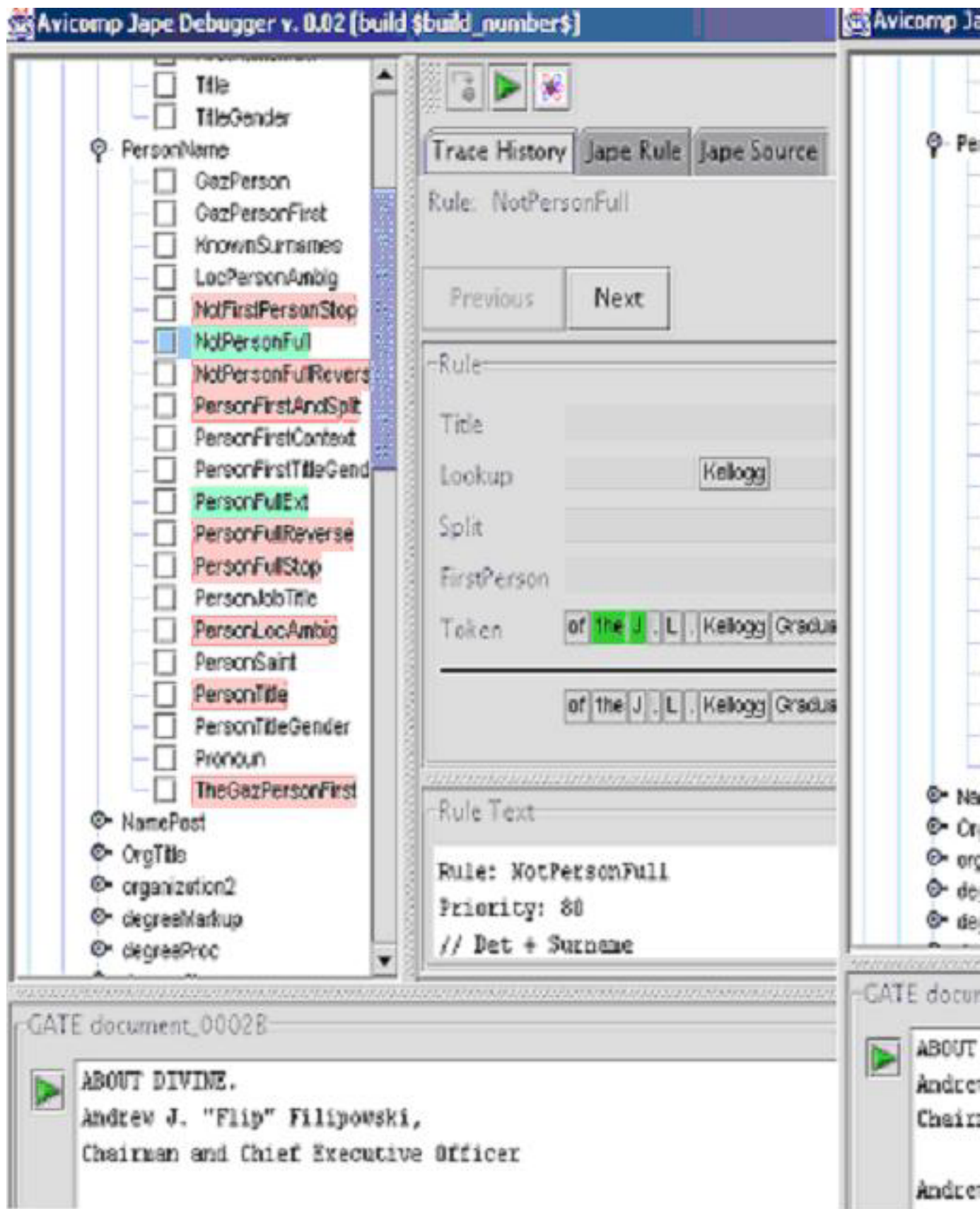


Figure 7.2: Finding Errors

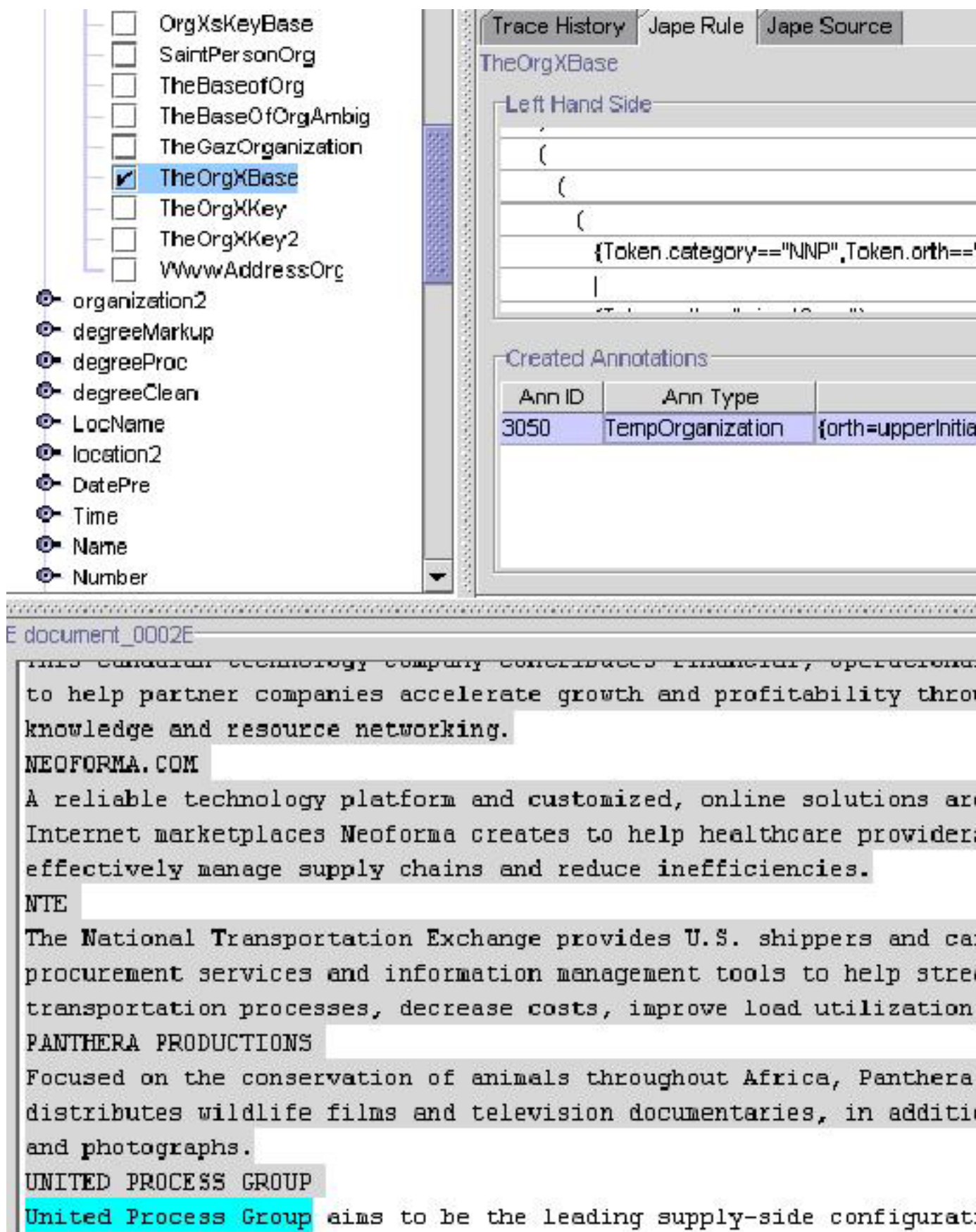


Figure 7.3: The Interface of the JAPE Debugger while Running in Breakpoint Mode

Chapter 8

ANNIE: a Nearly-New Information Extraction System

And so the time had passed predictably and soberly enough in work and routine chores, and the events of the previous night from first to last had faded; and only now that both their days' work was over, the child asleep and no further disturbance anticipated, did the shadowy figures from the masked ball, the melancholy stranger and the dominoes in red, revive; and those trivial encounters became magically and painfully interfused with the treacherous illusion of missed opportunities. Innocent yet ominous questions and vague ambiguous answers passed to and fro between them; and, as neither of them doubted the other's absolute candour, both felt the need for mild revenge. They exaggerated the extent to which their masked partners had attracted them, made fun of the jealous stirrings the other revealed, and lied dismissively about their own. Yet this light banter about the trivial adventures of the previous night led to more serious discussion of those hidden, scarcely admitted desires which are apt to raise dark and perilous storms even in the purest, most transparent soul; and they talked about those secret regions for which they felt hardly any longing, yet towards which the irrational wings of fate might one day drive them, if only in their dreams. For however much they might belong to one another heart and soul, they knew last night was not the first time they had been stirred by a whiff of freedom, danger and adventure.

Dream Story, Arthur Schnitzler, 1926 (pp. 4-5).

GATE was originally developed in the context of Information Extraction (IE) R&D, and IE systems in many languages and shapes and sizes have been created using GATE with the IE components that have been distributed with it (see [Maynard *et al.* 00] for descriptions of some of these projects).¹

¹The principal architects of the IE systems in GATE version 1 were Robert Gaizauskas and Kevin Humphreys. This work lives on in the LaSIE system. (A derivative of LaSIE was distributed with GATE

GATE is distributed with an IE system called ANNIE, A Nearly-New IE system (developed by Hamish Cunningham, Valentin Tablan, Diana Maynard, Kalina Bontcheva, Marin Dimitrov and others). ANNIE relies on finite state algorithms and the JAPE language (see chapter 7).

ANNIE components form a pipeline which appears in figure 8.1. ANNIE components are

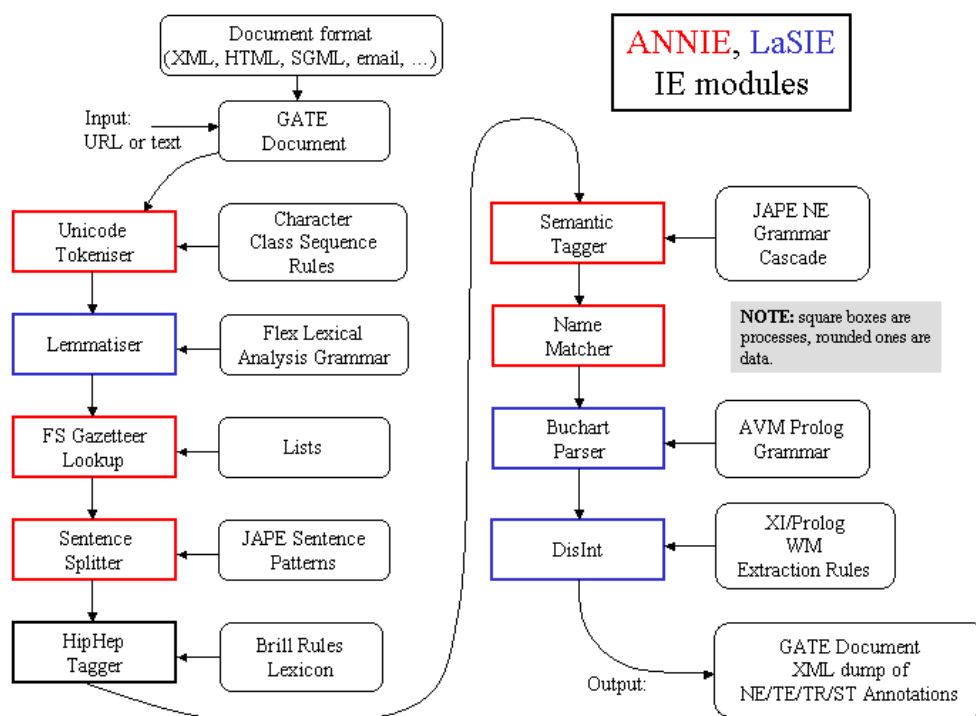


Figure 8.1: ANNIE and LaSIE

included with GATE (though the linguistic resources they rely on are generally more simple than the ones we use in-house). The rest of this chapter describes these components.

8.1 Tokeniser

The tokeniser splits the text into very simple tokens such as numbers, punctuation and words of different types. For example, we distinguish between words in uppercase and lowercase, and between certain types of punctuation. The aim is to limit the work of the tokeniser to maximise efficiency, and enable greater flexibility by placing the burden on the grammar rules, which are more adaptable.

version 1 under the name VIE, a Vanilla IE system.)

8.1.1 Tokeniser Rules

A rule has a left hand side (LHS) and a right hand side (RHS). The LHS is a regular expression which has to be matched on the input; the RHS describes the annotations to be added to the AnnotationSet. The LHS is separated from the RHS by '>'. The following operators can be used on the LHS:

```
| (or)
* (0 or more occurrences)
? (0 or 1 occurrences)
+ (1 or more occurrences)
```

The RHS uses ';' as a separator, and has the following format:

```
{LHS} > {Annotation type};{attribute1}={value1};...;{attribute
n}={value n}
```

Details about the primitive constructs available are given in the tokeniser file (DefaultTokeniser.Rules).

The following tokeniser rule is for a word beginning with a single capital letter:

```
"UPPERCASE_LETTER" "LOWERCASE_LETTER"* >
  Token;orth=upperInitial;kind=word;
```

It states that the sequence must begin with an uppercase letter, followed by zero or more lowercase letters. This sequence will then be annotated as type "Token". The attribute "orth" (orthography) has the value "upperInitial"; the attribute "kind" has the value "word".

8.1.2 Token Types

In the default set of rules, the following kinds of Token and SpaceToken are possible:

Word

A word is defined as any set of contiguous upper or lowercase letters, including a hyphen (but no other forms of punctuation). A word also has the attribute "orth", for which four values are defined:

- upperInitial - initial letter is uppercase, rest are lowercase
- allCaps - all uppercase letters
- lowerCase - all lowercase letters
- mixedCaps - any mixture of upper and lowercase letters not included in the above categories

Number

A number is defined as any combination of consecutive digits. There are no subdivisions of numbers.

Symbol

Two types of symbol are defined: currency symbol (e.g. '\$', '£') and symbol (e.g. '&', '^'). These are represented by any number of consecutive currency or other symbols (respectively).

Punctuation

Three types of punctuation are defined: start_punctuation (e.g. '('), end_punctuation (e.g. ')'), and other_punctuation (e.g. ':'). Each punctuation symbol is a separate token.

SpaceToken

White spaces are divided into two types of SpaceToken - space and control - according to whether they are pure space characters or control characters. Any contiguous (and homogeneous) set of space or control characters is defined as a SpaceToken.

The above description applies to the default tokeniser. However, alternative tokenisers can be created if necessary. The choice of tokeniser is then determined at the time of text processing.

8.1.3 English Tokeniser

The English Tokeniser is a processing resource that comprises a normal tokeniser and a JAPE transducer (see chapter refchap:jape). The transducer has the role of adapting the generic output of the tokeniser to the requirements of the English part-of-speech tagger. One such adaptation is the joining together in one token of constructs like "'30s", "'Cause", "'em",

“ ’N”, “ ’S”, “ ’s”, “ ’T”, “ ’d”, “ ’ll”, “ ’m”, “ ’re”, “ ’til”, “ ’ve”, etc. Another task of the JAPE transducer is to convert negative constructs like “don’t” from three tokens (“don”, “ ’ ” and “t”) into two tokens (“do” and “n’t”).

The English Tokeniser should always be used on English texts that need to be processed afterwards by the POS Tagger.

8.2 Gazetteer

The gazetteer lists used are plain text files, with one entry per line. Each list represents a set of names, such as names of cities, organisations, days of the week, etc.

Below is a small section of the list for units of currency:

```
Ecu
European Currency Units
FFr
Fr
German mark
German marks
New Taiwan dollar
New Taiwan dollars
NT dollar
NT dollars
```

An index file (`lists.def`) is used to access these lists; for each list, a major type is specified and, optionally, a minor type ². In the example below, the first column refers to the list name, the second column to the major type, and the third to the minor type. These lists are compiled into finite state machines. Any text tokens that are matched by these machines will be annotated with features specifying the major and minor types. Grammar rules then specify the types to be identified in particular circumstances. Each gazetteer list should reside in the same directory as the index file.

```
currency_prefix.lst:currency_unit:pre_amount
currency_unit.lst:currency_unit:post_amount
date.lst:date:specific
day.lst:date:day
```

So, for example, if a specific day needs to be identified, the minor type “day” should be specified in the grammar, in order to match only information about specific days; if any kind

²it is also possible to include a language in the same way, where lists for different languages are used, though ANNIE is only concerned with monolingual recognition

of date needs to be identified, the major type “date” should be specified, to enable tokens annotated with any information about dates to be identified. More information about this can be found in the following section.

8.3 Sentence Splitter

The **sentence splitter** is a cascade of finite-state transducers which segments the text into sentences. This module is required for the tagger. The splitter uses a gazetteer list of abbreviations to help distinguish sentence-marking full stops from other kinds.

Each sentence is annotated with the type `Sentence`. Each sentence break (such as a full stop) is also given a “Split” annotation. This has several possible types: “.”, “punctuation”, “CR” (a line break) or “multi” (a series of punctuation marks such as “!?!”).

The sentence splitter is domain and application-independent.

8.4 Part of Speech Tagger

The **tagger** [Hepple 00] is a modified version of the Brill tagger, which produces a part-of-speech tag as an annotation on each word or symbol. The list of tags used is given in Appendix D. The tagger uses a default lexicon and ruleset (the result of training on a large corpus taken from the Wall Street Journal). Both of these can be modified manually if necessary. Two additional lexicons exist - one for texts in all uppercase (`lexicon_cap`), and one for texts in all lowercase (`lexicon_lower`). To use these, the default lexicon should be replaced with the appropriate lexicon at load time. The default ruleset should still be used in this case.

8.5 Semantic Tagger

ANNIE’s semantic tagger is based on the JAPE language – see chapter [refchap:jape](#). It contains rules which act on annotations assigned in earlier phases, in order to produce outputs of annotated entities.

8.6 Orthographic Coreference (OrthoMatcher)

(Note: this component was previously known as a “NameMatcher”.)

The Orthomatcher module adds identity relations between named entities found by the semantic tagger, in order to perform coreference. It does not find new named entities as such, but it may assign a type to an unclassified proper name, using the type of a matching name.

The matching rules are only invoked if the names being compared are both of the same type, i.e. both already tagged as (say) organisations, or if one of them is classified as ‘unknown’. This prevents a previously classified name from being recategorised.

8.6.1 GATE Interface

Input – entity annotations, with an id attribute.

Output – matches attributes added to the existing entity annotations.

8.6.2 Resources

A lookup table of aliases is used to record non-matching strings which represent the same entity, e.g. “IBM” and “Big Blue”, “Coca-Cola” and “Coke”. There is also a table of spurious matches, i.e. matching strings which do not represent the same entity, e.g. “BT Wireless” and “BT Cellnet” (which are two different organizations). The list of tables to be used is a load time parameter of the orthomatcher: a default list is set but can be changed as necessary.

8.6.3 Processing

The wrapper builds an array of the strings, types and IDs of all `name` annotations, which is then passed to a string comparison function for pairwise comparisons of all entries.

8.7 Pronominal Coreference

The pronominal coreference module performs anaphora resolution using the JAPE grammar formalism. Note that this module is not automatically loaded with the other ANNIE modules, but can be loaded separately as a Processing Resource. The main module consists of three submodules:

- quoted text module
- pleonastic it module

- pronominal resolution module

The first two modules are helper submodules for the pronominal one, because they do not perform anything related to coreference resolution except the location of quoted fragments and pleonastic it occurrences in text. They generate temporary annotations which are used by the pronominal submodule (such temporary annotations are removed later).

The main coreference module can operate successfully only if all ANNIE modules were already executed. The module depends on the following annotations created from the respective ANNIE modules:

- Token (English Tokenizer)
- Sentence (Sentence Splitter)
- Split (Sentence Splitter)
- Location (NE Transducer, OrthoMatcher)
- Person (NE Transducer, OrthoMatcher)
- Organization (NE Transducer, OrthoMatcher)

For each pronoun (anaphor) the coreference module generates an annotation of type "Coreference" containing two features:

- antecedent offset - this is the offset of the starting node for the annotation (entity) which is proposed as the antecedent, or null if no antecedent can be proposed.
- matches - this is a list of annotation IDs that comprise the coreference chain comprising this anaphor/antecedent pair.

8.7.1 Quoted Speech Submodule

The quoted speech submodule identifies quoted fragments in the text being analysed. The identified fragments are used by the pronominal coreference submodule for the proper resolution of pronouns such as I, me, my, etc. which appear in quoted speech fragments. The module produces "Quoted Text" annotations.

The submodule itself is a JAPE transducer which loads a JAPE grammar and builds an FSM over it. The FSM is intended to match the quoted fragments and generate appropriate annotations that will be used later by the pronominal module.

The JAPE grammar consists of only four rules, which create temporary annotations for all punctuation marks that may enclose quoted speech, such as ”, ’, “, etc. These rules then try to identify fragments enclosed by such punctuation. Finally all temporary annotations generated during the processing, except the ones of type ”Quoted Text”, are removed (because no other module will need them later).

8.7.2 Pleonastic It submodule

The pleonastic it submodule matches pleonastic occurrences of ”it”. Similar to the quoted speech submodule, it is a JAPE transducer operating with a grammar containing patterns that match the most commonly observed pleonastic it constructs.

8.7.3 Pronominal Resolution Submodule

The main functionality of the coreference resolution module is in the pronominal resolution submodule. This uses the result from the execution of the quoted speech and pleonastic it submodules. The module works according to the following algorithm:

- Preprocess the current document. This step locates the annotations that the submodule need (such as Sentence, Token, Person, etc.) and prepares the appropriate data structures for them.
- For each pronoun do the following:
 - inspect the proper appropriate context for all candidate antecedents for this kind of pronoun;
 - choose the best antecedent (if any);
- Create the coreference chains from the individual anaphor/antecedent pairs and the coreference information supplied by the OrthoMatcher (this step is performed from the main coreference module).

8.7.4 Detailed description of the algorithm

Full details of the pronominal coreference algorithm are as follows.

Preprocessing

The preprocessing task includes the following subtasks:

- Identifying the sentences in the document being processed. The sentences are identified with the help of the Sentence annotations generated from the Sentence Splitter. For each sentence a data structure is prepared that contains three lists. The lists contain the annotations for the person/organization/location named entities appearing in the sentence. The named entities in the sentence are identified with the help of the Person, Location and Organization annotations that are already generated from the Named Entity Transducer and the OrthoMatcher.
- The gender of each person in the sentence is identified and stored in a global data structure. It is possible that the gender information is missing for some entities - for example if only the person family name is observed then the Named Entity transducer will be unable to deduce the gender. In such cases the list with the matching entities generated by the OrthoMatcher is inspected and if some of the orthographic matches contains gender information it is assigned to the entity being processed.
- The identified pleonastic it occurrences are stored in a separate list. The "Pleonastic It" annotations generated from the pleonastic submodule are used for the task.
- For each quoted text fragment, identified by the quoted text submodule, a special structure is created that contains the persons and the 3rd person singular pronouns such as "he" and "she" that appear in the sentence containing the quoted text, but not in the quoted text span (i.e. the ones preceding and succeeding the quote).

Pronoun resolution

This task includes the following subtasks:

Retrieving all the pronouns in the document. Pronouns are represented as annotations of type "Token" with feature "category" having value "PRP" or "PRP\$". The former classifies possessive adjectives such as my, your, etc. and the latter classifies personal, reflexive etc. pronouns. The two types of pronouns are combined in one list and sorted according to their offset in the text.

For each pronoun in the list the following actions are performed:

- If the pronoun is it then a check is performed if this is a pleonastic occurrence and if so then no further attempt for resolution is made.
- The proper context is determined. The context size is expressed in the number of sentences it will contain. The context always includes the current sentence (the one containing the pronoun), the preceding sentence and zero or more preceding sentences.
- Depending on the type of pronoun, a set of candidate antecedents is proposed. The candidate set includes the named entities that are compatible with this pronoun. For example if the current pronoun is she then only the Person annotations with "gender" feature equal to "female" or "unknown" will be considered as candidates.

- From all candidates, one is chosen according to evaluation criteria specific for the pronoun.

Coreference chain generation

This step is actually performed by the main module. After executing each of the submodules on the current document, the coreference module follows the steps:

- Retrieves the anaphor/antecedent pairs generated from them.
- For each pair, the orthographic matches (if any) of the antecedent entity is retrieved and then extended with the anaphor of the pair (i.e. the pronoun). The result is the coreference chain for the entity. The coreference chain contains the IDs of the annotations (entities) that co-refer.
- A new Coreference annotation is created for each chain. The annotation contains a single feature "matches" which value is the coreference chain (the list with IDs). The annotations are exported in a pre-specified annotation set.

The resolution for she, her, her\$, he, him, his, herself and himself is similar because the analysis of the corpus showed that these pronouns are related to their antecedents in similar manner. The characteristics of the resolution process are:

- Context inspected is not very big - cases where the antecedent is found more than 3 sentences further back than the anaphor are rare.
- Recency factor is heavily used - the candidate antecedents that appear closer to the anaphor in the text are scored better.
- Anaphora have higher priority than cataphora. If there is an anaphoric candidate and a cataphoric one, then the anaphoric one is preferred, even if the recency factor scores the cataphoric candidate better.

The resolution process performs the following steps:

- Inspect the context of the anaphor for candidate antecedents. A candidate is considered every Person annotation. Cases where she/her refers to inanimate entity (ship for example) are not handled.
- For each candidate perform a gender compatibility check - only candidates having "gender" feature equal to "unknown" or compatible with the pronoun are considered for further evaluation.

- Evaluate each candidate with the best candidate so far. If the two candidates are anaphoric for the pronoun then choose the one that appears closer. The same holds for the case where the two candidates are cataphoric relative to the pronoun. If one is anaphoric and the other is cataphoric then choose the former, even if the latter appears closer to the pronoun.

Resolution of it, its, itself

This set of pronouns also shares many common characteristics. The resolution process contains certain differences with the one for the previous set of pronouns. Successful resolution for it, its, itself is more difficult because of the following factors:

- There is no gender compatibility restriction. In the case when there are several candidates in the context, the gender compatibility restriction is very useful for rejecting some of the candidates. When no such restriction exists, and with the lack of any syntactic or ontological information about the entities in the context, the recency factor plays the major role for choosing the best antecedent.
- The number of nominal antecedents (i.e. entities that are referred not by name) is much higher compared to the number of such antecedents for she, he, etc. In this case trying to find antecedent only amongst named entities degrades the precision a lot.

Resolution of I, me, my, myself

Resolution of these pronouns is dependent on the work of the quoted speech submodule. One important difference from the resolution process of other pronouns is that the context is not measured in sentences but depends solely on the quote span. Another difference is that the context is not contiguous - the quoted fragment itself is excluded from the context, because it is unlikely that an antecedent for I, me, etc. appears there. The context itself consists of:

- the part of the sentence where the quoted fragment originates, that is not contained in the quote - i.e. the text prior to the quote;
- the part of the sentence where the quoted fragment ends, that is not contained in the quote - i.e. the text following the quote;
- the part of the sentence preceding the sentence where the quote originates, which is not included in other quote.

It is worth noting that contrary to other pronouns, the antecedent for I, me, my and myself is most often cataphoric or if anaphoric it is not in the same sentence with the quoted fragment.

The resolution algorithm consists of the following steps:

- Locate the quoted fragment description that contains the pronoun. If the pronoun is not contained in any fragment then return without proposing an antecedent.
- Inspect the context for the quoted fragment (as defined above) for candidate antecedents. Candidates are considered annotations of type Pronoun or annotations of type Token with features category = "PRP", string = "she" or category = "PRP", string = "he".
- Try to locate a candidate in the text succeeding the quoted fragment (first pattern). If more than one candidate is present, choose the closest to the end of the quote. If a candidate is found then propose it as antecedent and exit.
- Try to locate candidate in the text preceding the quoted fragment (third pattern). Choose the closes one to the beginning of the quote. If found then set as antecedent and exit.
- Try to locate antecedents in the unquoted part of the sentence preceding the sentence where the quote starts (second pattern). Give preference to the one closest to the end of the quote (if any) in the preceding sentence or closest to the sentence beginning.

8.8 A Walk-Through Example

Let us take an example of a 3-stage procedure using the tokeniser, gazetteer and named-entity grammar. Suppose we wish to recognise the phrase "800,000 US dollars" as an entity of type "Number", with the feature "money".

First of all, we give an example of a grammar rule (and corresponding macros) for money, which would recognise this type of pattern.

```
Macro: MILLION_BILLION
({Token.string == "m"}|
{Token.string == "million"}|
{Token.string == "b"}|
{Token.string == "billion"}
)
```

```
Macro: AMOUNT_NUMBER
({Token.kind == number}
({Token.string == ","|
  {Token.string == "."})
```

```

{Token.kind == number})*
((SpaceToken.kind == space)?
 (MILLION_BILLION)?)
)

Rule: Money1
// e.g. 30 pounds
(
  (AMOUNT_NUMBER)
  (SpaceToken.kind == space)?
  ({Lookup.majorType == currency_unit})
)
:money -->
:money.Number = {kind = "money", rule = "Money1"}

```

8.8.1 Step 1 - Tokenisation

The tokeniser separates this phrase into the following tokens. In general, a word is comprised of any number of letters of either case, including a hyphen, but nothing else; a number is composed of any sequence of digits; punctuation is recognised individually (each character is a separate token), and any number of consecutive spaces and/or control characters are recognised as a single spacetoken.

```

Token, string = '800', kind = number, length = 3
Token, string = ',', kind = punctuation, length = 1
Token, string = '000', kind = number, length = 3
SpaceToken, string = ' ', kind = space, length = 1
Token, string = 'US', kind = word, length = 2, orth = allCaps
SpaceToken, string = ' ', kind = space, length = 1
Token, string = 'dollars', kind = word, length = 7, orth = lowercase

```

8.8.2 Step 2 - List Lookup

The gazetteer lists are then searched to find all occurrences of matching words in the text. It finds the following match for the string "US dollars":

```
Lookup, minorType = post_amount, majorType = currency_unit
```

8.8.3 Step 3 - Grammar Rules

The grammar rule for money is then invoked. The macro MILLION_BILLION recognises any of the strings “m”, “million”, “b”, “billion”. Since none of these exist in the text, it passes onto the next macro. The AMOUNT_NUMBER macro recognises a number, optionally followed by any number of sequences of the form “dot or comma plus number”, followed by an optional space and an optional MILLION_BILLION. In this case, “800,000” will be recognised. Finally, the rule Money1 is invoked. This recognises the string identified by the AMOUNT_NUMBER macro, followed by an optional space, followed by a unit of currency (as determined by the gazetteer). In this case, “US dollars” has been identified as a currency unit, so the rule Money1 recognises the entire string “800,000 US dollars”. Following the rule, it will be annotated as a Number entity of type Money:

```
Number, kind = money, rule = Money1
```

Chapter 9

(More CREOLE) Plugins

For the previous reader was none other than myself. I had already read this book long ago.

The old sickness has me in its grip again: amnesia in litteris, the total loss of literary memory. I am overcome by a wave of resignation at the vanity of all striving for knowledge, all striving of any kind. Why read at all? Why read this book a second time, since I know that very soon not even a shadow of a recollection will remain of it? Why do anything at all, when all things fall apart? Why live, when one must die? And I clap the lovely book shut, stand up, and slink back, vanquished, demolished, to place it again among the mass of anonymous and forgotten volumes lined up on the shelf.

...

But perhaps - I think, to console myself - perhaps reading (like life) is not a matter of being shunted on to some track or abruptly off it. Maybe reading is an act by which consciousness is changed in such an imperceptible manner that the reader is not even aware of it. The reader suffering from amnesia in litteris is most definitely changed by his reading, but without noticing it, because as he reads, those critical faculties of his brain that could tell him that change is occurring are changing as well. And for one who is himself a writer, the sickness may conceivably be a blessing, indeed a necessary precondition, since it protects him against that crippling awe which every great work of literature creates, and because it allows him to sustain a wholly uncomplicated relationship to plagiarism, without which nothing original can be created.

Three Stories and a Reflection, Patrick Suskind, 1995 (pp. 82, 86).

This chapter describes additional CREOLE resources which do not form part of ANNIE.

9.1 Document Reset

The document reset resource enables the document to be reset to its original state, by removing all the annotation sets and their contents, apart from the one containing the document format analysis (Original Markups). This resource is normally added to the beginning of an application, so that a document is reset before an application is rerun on that document.

9.2 Verb Group Chunker

The rule-based verb chunker is based on a number of grammars of English [Cobuild 99, Azar 89]. We have developed 68 rules for the identification of non recursive verb groups. The rules cover finite ('is investigating'), non-finite ('to investigate'), participles ('investigated'), and special verb constructs ('is going to investigate'). All the forms may include adverbials and negatives. The rules have been implemented in JAPE. The finite state analyser produces an annotation of type 'VG' with features and values that encode syntactic information ('type', 'tense', 'voice', 'neg', etc.). The rules use the output of the POS tagger as well as information about the identity of the tokens (e.g. the token 'might' is used to identify modals).

The grammar for verb group identification can be loaded as a Jape grammar into the GATE architecture and can be used in any application: the module is domain independent.

9.3 OntoText Gazetteer

The OntoText Gazetteer is a Natural Gazetteer, implemented from the OntoText Lab (<http://www.ontotext.com/>). Its implementation is based on simple lookup in several `java.util.HashMap`, and is inspired by the strange idea of Atanas Kiryakov, that searching in HashMaps will be faster than a search in a Finite State Machine (FSM).

Here follows a description of the algorithm that lies behind this implementation:

Every phrase i.e. every list entry is separated into several parts. The parts are determined by the whitespaces lying among them. e.g. the phrase : "form is emptiness" has three parts : form, is & emptiness. There is also a list of HashMaps: `mapsList` which has as many elements as the longest (in terms of "count of parts") phrase in the lists. So the first part of a phrase is placed in the first map. The first part + space + second part is placed in the second map, etc. The full phrase is placed in the appropriate map, and a reference to a Lookup object is attached to it.

On first sight it seems that this algorithm is certainly much more memory-consuming than a finite state machine (FSM) with the parts of the phrases as transitions, but this is actually not

so important since the average length of the phrases (in parts) in the lists is 1.1. On the other hand, one advantage of the algorithm is that, although unconventional, on average it takes four times less memory and works three times faster than an optimized FSM implementation.

The lookup part is implemented in `execute()` so a lot of tokenization takes place there. After defining the candidates for phrase-parts, we build a candidate phrase and try to look it up in the maps (in which `map` again depends on the count of parts in the current candidate phrase).

9.3.1 Prerequisites

The phrases to be recognised should be listed in a set of files, one for each type of occurrence (as for the standard gazetteer).

The gazetteer is built with the information from a file that contains the set of lists (which are files as well) and the associated type for each list. The file defining the set of lists should have the following syntax: each list definition should be written on its own line and should contain:

- the file name (required)
- the major type (required)
- the minor type (optional)
- the language(s) (optional)

The elements of each definition are separated by ":". The following is an example of a valid definition:

```
personmale.lst:person:male:english
```

Each file named in the lists definition file is just a list containing one entry per line.

When this gazetteer is run over some input text (a GATE document) it will generate annotations of type `Lookup` having the attributes specified in the definition file.

9.3.2 Setup

In order to use this gazetteer from within GATE the following should reside in the creole setup file (`creole.xml`):

```

<RESOURCE>
  <NAME>OntoText Gazetteer</NAME>
  <CLASS>com.ontotext.gate.gazetteer.NaturalGazetteer</CLASS>
  <COMMENT>A list lookup component. for documentation please refer to
(www.ontotext.com/gate/gazetteer/documentation/index.html). For licence
information please refer to
(www.ontotext.com/gate/gazetteer/documentation/licence.ontotext.html) or to
licence.ontotext.html in the lib folder of
GATE</COMMENT>
  <PARAMETER NAME="document" RUNTIME="true" COMMENT="The document to be
processed">gate.Document</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="annotationSetName" RUNTIME="true" COMMENT="The
annotation set to be used for the generated
annotations" OPTIONAL="true">java.lang.String</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER NAME="listsURL"
DEFAULT="gate:/creole/gazetteer/default/lists.def" COMMENT="The URL to the
file with list of
lists" SUFFIXES="def">java.net.URL</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER DEFAULT="UTF-8" NAME="encoding" COMMENT="The encoding used
for reading the
definitions">java.lang.String</PARAMETER>
  <PARAMETER DEFAULT="true" NAME="caseSensitive" COMMENT="Should this
gazetteer diferentiate on case. Currently the
Gazetteer works only in case sensitive mode.">java.lang.Boolean</PARAMETER>
  <ICON>shefGazetteer.gif</ICON>
</RESOURCE>

```

9.4 Flexible Gazetteer

The Flexible Gazetteer provides users with the flexibility to choose their own customized input and an external Gazetteer. For example, the user might want to replace words in the text with their base forms (which is an output of the Morphological Analyser) or to segment a Chinese text (using the Chinese Tokeniser) before running the Gazetteer on the Chinese text.

The Flexible Gazetteer performs lookup over a document based on the values of an arbitrary feature of an arbitrary annotation type, by using an *externally provided* gazetteer. It is important to use an external gazetteer as this allows the use of any type of gazetteer (e.g. an Ontological gazetteer).

Input to the Flexible Gazetteer:

Runtime parameters:

- Document – the document to be processed
- **inputAnnotationSetName** The annotationSet where the Flexible Gazetteer should search for the AnnotationType.feature specified in the inputFeatureNames.
- **outputAnnotationSetName** The AnnotationSet where Lookup annotations should be placed.

Creation time parameters:

- **inputFeatureNames** – when selected, these feature values are used to replace the corresponding original text. A temporary document is created from the values of the specified features on the specified annotation types. For example: for Token.string the temporary document will have the same content as the original one but all the SpaceToken annotations will have been replaced by single spaces.
- **gazetteerClassName** – the name of an external Gazetteer class (including package path), which should run over a temporary document. This generates the Lookup annotations with features.

Once the external gazetteer has annotated text with Lookup annotations, Lookup annotations on the temporary document are converted to Lookup annotations on the original document. Finally the temporary document is deleted.

9.5 Flexible Exporter

The Flexible Exporter enables the user to save a document in its original format with added annotations. The user can select the name of the annotation set from which these annotations are to be found, which annotations from this set are to be included, whether features are to be included, and various renaming options such as renaming the annotations and the file.

At load time, the following parameters can be set for the flexible exporter:

- **includeFeatures** - if set to true, features are included with the annotations exported; if false (the default status), they are not.
- **useSuffixForDumpFiles** - if set to true (the default status), the output files have the suffix defined in `suffixForDumpFiles`; if false, no suffix is defined, and the output file simply overwrites the existing file (but see the `outputFileUrl` runtime parameter for an alternative).
- **suffixForDumpFiles** - this defines the suffix if `useSuffixForDumpFiles` is set to true. By default the suffix is `.gate`.

The following runtime parameters can also be set (after the file has been selected for the application):

- `annotationSetName` - this enables the user to specify the name of the annotation set which contains the annotations to be exported. If no annotation set is defined, it will use the Default annotation set.
- `annotationTypes` - this contains a list of the annotations to be exported. By default it is set to Person, Location and Date.
- `dumpTypes` - this contains a list of names for the exported annotations. If the annotation name is to remain the same, this list should be identical to the list in `annotationTypes`. The list of annotation names must be in the same order as the corresponding annotation types in `annotationTypes`.
- `outputfileUrl` - this enables the user to select a different name for the output file. The file will be stored in the same directory as the original source file.

9.6 DAML+OIL Exporter

9.6.1 Introduction

The DAML+OIL Export is a GATE PR that allows the named entities found in documents to be exported as instances of a specified ontology in DAML+OIL format. At present only DAML+OIL (<http://www.daml.org>) is supported, but migrating the code to OWL (<http://www.w3.org/TR/owl-ref/>) is trivial.

The DAML+OIL Export can work in two modes. In the first mode (using the normal gazetteer), all you need is to have an ontology containing concepts such as Person, Location, Organization, etc. corresponding to the named entity types recognized in GATE. When you have a corpus processed with ANNIE (so that certain named entities in the corpus are recognized) then you can create a DAML+OIL Export processing resource (specifying as initialisation parameter the ontology to be used as reference). When the DAML+OIL resource processes the (already annotated) corpus, for each named entity found that is of some type (such as Location), if a corresponding concept with the same name as the named entity type (such as Location) exists in the ontology then a new DAML instance will be generated in the export file (e.g.

```
<gate:Location rdf:about="?"/>
```

).

The second way to use the DAML+OIL export is when you have used the OntoText OntoGazetteer (instead of the default ANNIE gazetteer) to annotate the corpus. The OntoGazetteer will work in a way similar to the default gazetteer but it will generate more meaningful annotations according to some ontology, i.e. instead of having a Location annotation the OntoGazetteer may generate more specific annotations such as City, River, Mountain, etc. When the DAML+OIL Export processes a corpus that was annotated with the help of the OntoGazetteer, the exported instances will also be from the more specific types (such as City, Mountain, etc).

9.6.2 Using the DAML+OIL Export

To export a corpus annotated with the default gazetteer, the following steps should be performed:

- Process the corpus with ANNIE
- Create an ontology that will be used as reference from the DAML+OIL Export
- Load a DAML+OIL PR in the GATE IDE, specifying the relevant ontology
- Process the corpus with the DAML+OIL PR

As a result, the specified output directory will contain DAML files representing instance data found in each document of the processed corpus. There follows a more detailed explanation of the steps that should be followed:

Process the corpus with ANNIE

No special actions should be performed at this step. The corpus is annotated with ANNIE in the ordinary way. A sample processed file is shown in Figure 9.1.

Create an ontology

Create a DAML+OIL ontology that contains concepts such as Location, Person, Organization, etc. with names corresponding to the Named Entity types in GATE. This ontology will be used as reference from the DAML+OIL Export, i.e. for each annotation found in the processed corpus, the exporter will lookup the ontology for a concept with the same name and if such exists then an instance of this type will be generated in the output DAML file (containing instance data).

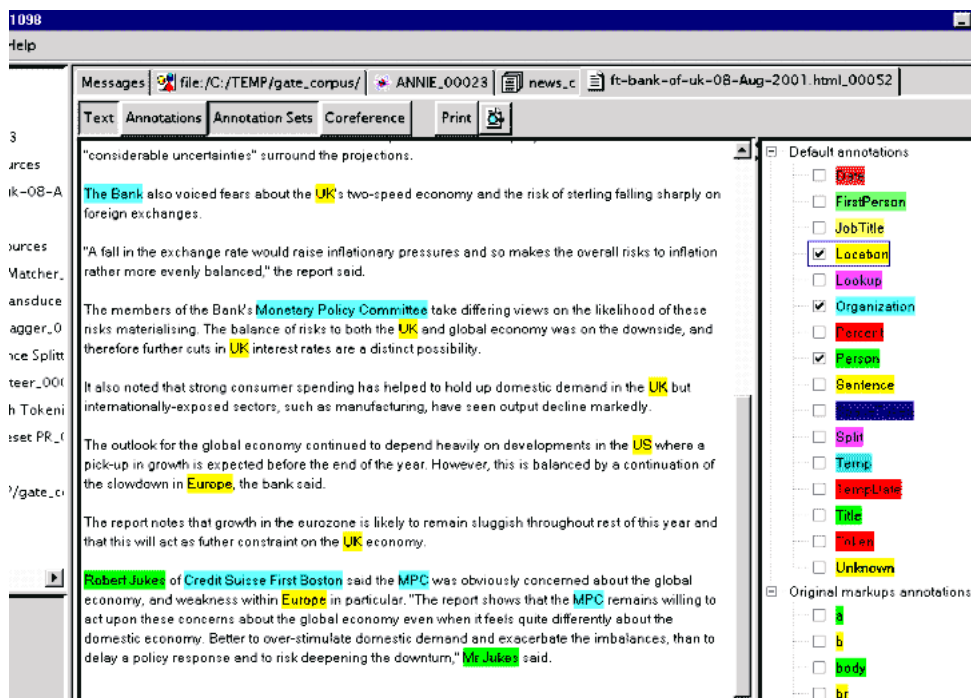


Figure 9.1:

An example ontology is shown below. Note that the ontology contains many more concepts than necessary (such as City, Mountain, etc) because the corpus is annotated with the default gazetteer that will never generate such annotations.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<rdf:RDF xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#" xmlns:rdfs="http://
<daml:Ontology rdf:about="">
? <daml:versionInfo>1.0</daml:versionInfo>
? <daml:imports rdf:resource="http://www.daml.org/2001/03/daml+oil" />
</daml:Ontology>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Businessman">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Person" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Person" />
<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Organization" />

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="City">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Location" />
</rdfs:Class>
```

```
<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Location" />

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Company">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Organization" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Country">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Location" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Date" />

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Department">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Government" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Government">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Organization" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="MediaPerson">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Person" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Ministry">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Government" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="MoneyAmount" />

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Politician">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Person" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Province">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Location" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Region">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Location" />
</rdfs:Class>

<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Sportsman">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Person" />
```

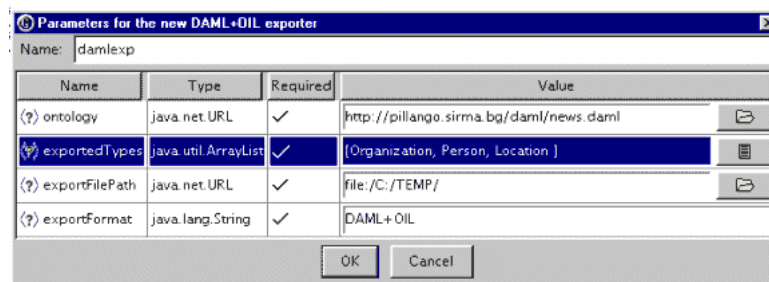


Figure 9.2:

```
</rdfs:Class>
```

```
<rdfs:Class rdf:ID="Mountain">
? <rdfs:subClassOf rdf:resource="#Region" />
</rdfs:Class>
```

```
</rdf:RDF>
```

Load the DAML+OIL processing resource in GATE

DAML+OIL Export is available in the default GATE distribution so you do not need to modify creole.xml in order to use it. When loading the resource, simply specify:

- The ontology to be used
- The named entity types that will be exported (in this case only Organization, Person and Location annotations will be considered for export)
- The output directory
- The output format. At present only DAML+OIL is supported but other ontology languages such as OWL may be supported in the future.

Process the corpus with the DAML+OIL PR

Create a Corpus Pipeline containing inly the DAML+OIL Export processing resource and run it over the annotated corpus from step 1.1. Example output (for the file from 1.1) looks like the following:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
```



```

<rdf:RDF xmlns:gate="http://pillango.sirma.bg/daml/news.daml#" xmlns:daml="http://www.daml.org/2001/03/daml+oil#"
  <daml:Ontology rdf:about="" daml:versionInfo="1.0">
  ? <daml:comment>autogenerated from GATE RDFFormatExporter</daml:comment>
  </daml:Ontology>
  <daml:Property rdf:about="http://www.daml.org/2001/03/daml+oil#comment" />
  <daml:Property rdf:about="http://www.daml.org/2001/03/daml+oil#versionInfo" />
  <daml:Property rdf:about="http://www.daml.org/2001/03/daml+oil#sameIndividualAs" />

  <gate:Location rdf:about="US" />

  <gate:Location rdf:about="UK" />

  <gate:Location rdf:about="Europe" />

  <gate:Organization rdf:about="Credit Suisse First Boston" />

  <gate:Organization rdf:about="The Financial Times" />

  <gate:Organization rdf:about="Bank of England">
  ? <daml:sameIndividualAs rdf:resource="The Bank" rdf:type="http://pillango.sirma.bg/daml/news.daml#" />
  </gate:Organization>

  <gate:Organization rdf:about="MPC">
  ? <daml:sameIndividualAs rdf:resource="Monetary Policy Committee" rdf:type="http://pillango.sirma.bg/daml/news.daml#" />
  </gate:Organization>

  <gate:Person rdf:about="Chris Flood" />

  <gate:Person rdf:about="Andrew Child" />

  <gate:Person rdf:about="Mr Jukes">
  ? <daml:sameIndividualAs rdf:resource="Robert Jukes" rdf:type="http://pillango.sirma.bg/daml/news.daml#" />
  </gate:Person>

  ? </rdf:RDF>

```

Some important facts to note:

- The namespace for the exported instance is gate
- Co-referring entities (identified by the Orthomatcher) will be linked with the help of the daml:dameIndividualAs construct

- Pronominal coreferents will not be exported, i.e. pronouns referring to entities in the text (he, she, etc) won't appear in the output
- The URL `pillango.sirma.bg/daml/news.daml` is used only for clarification. It should not be referenced in your applications.

9.6.3 Exporting a corpus annotated with the OntoGazetteer

The steps for using the DAML+OIL Export with the OntoGazetteer are the same. The only difference is that in step 1.1 instead of using the ANNIE gazetteer, the corpus should be annotated with the OntoGazetteer. Because it will generate more meaningful annotations such as City, River, etc. according to the specified ontology, the Export will also generate more specific instances. In our example, instead of having

```
<gate:Location rdf:about="US" />  
<gate:Location rdf:about="UK" />
```

instances, it is expected that

```
<gate:Country rdf:about="US" />  
<gate:Country rdf:about="UK" />
```

instances are exported, since the OntoGazetteer is expected to generate 'Country' annotations for "US" and "UK", instead of "Location" annotations.

More details about the OntoGazetteer can be found in 9.3.

9.7 Annotation Set Transfer

The Annotation Set Transfer enables the parts of a document matching a particular annotation to be transferred into a new annotation set. For example, this can be used when a user only wants to run a processing resource over a specific part of a document, such as the Body of an HTML document. The user specifies the name of the annotation set and the annotation which covers the part of the document they wish to transfer, and the name of the new annotation set. All the other annotations corresponding to the matched text will be transferred to the new annotation set. For example, we might wish to perform named entity recognition on the body of an HTML text, but not on the headers. After tokenising and performing gazetteer lookup on the whole text, we would use the Annotation Set Transfer to transfer those annotations (created by the tokeniser and gazetteer) into a new annotation

set, and then run the remaining NE resources, such as the semantic tagger and coreference modules, on them.

The Annotation Set Transfer has no loadtime parameters. It has the following runtime parameters:

- `inputASName` - this defines the annotation set which is to be transferred. If nothing is specified, the Default annotation set will be used.
- `outputASName` - this defines the new annotation set which will contain the transferred annotations. The default for this is a set called Filtered.
- `tagASName` - this defines the annotation set which contains the annotation covering the relevant part of the document to be transferred.
- `textTagName` - this defines the name of the annotation covering the relevant part of the document to be transferred.

For example, suppose we wish to perform named entity recognition on only the text covered by the BODY annotation from the Original Markups annotation set in an HTML document. We have to run the gazetteer and tokeniser on the entire document, because since these resources do not depend on any other annotations, we cannot specify an input annotation set for them to use. We therefore transfer these annotations to a new annotation set (Filtered) and then perform the NE recognition over these annotations, by specifying this annotation set as the input annotation set for all the following resources. In this example, we would set the following parameters (assuming that the annotations from the tokenise and gazetteer are initially placed in the Default annotation set).

- `inputASName`: Default
- `outputASName`: Filtered
- `tagASName`: Original markups
- `textTagName`: BODY

9.8 Information Retrieval in GATE

GATE comes with a full-featured Information Retrieval (IR) subsystem that allows queries to be performed against GATE corpora. This combination of IE and IR means that documents can be retrieved from the corpora not only based on their textual content but also according to their features or annotations. For example, a search over the Person annotations for "Bush" will return documents with higher relevance, compared to a search in the content for

the string "bush". The current implementation is based on the most popular open source full-text search engine - Lucene (available at <http://jakarta.apache.org/lucene/>) but other implementations may be added in the future.

An Information Retrieval system is most often considered a system that accepts as input a set of documents (corpus) and a query (combination of search terms) and returns as input only those documents from the corpus which are considered as relevant according to the query. Usually, in addition to the documents, a proper relevance measure (score) is returned for each document. There exist many relevance metrics, but usually documents which are considered more relevant, according to the query, are scored higher.

Figure 9.3 shows the results from running a query against an indexed corpus in GATE.

Document	Score
gu-ecb-10-aug-2001.xml_000D0	0.237
ft-SSL-10-aug-2001.xml_0008E	0.22
ft-bt-03-aug-2001.xml_00055	0.186
ft-industrial-gloom-07-Aug-2001.xml_00082	0.186
ft-bt-at&t-01-jul-2001.xml_0005E	0.179
gu-telewest-10-aug-2001.xml_00114	0.179
ft-bt-26-jul-2001.xml_0005B	0.155
ft-WestLB-BT-05-aug-2001.xml_00094	0.155
ft-bank-of-england-02-aug-2001.xml_00046	0.143
gu-ECB-07-aug-2001.xml_000CD	0.143
gu-ECB-03-aug-2001.xml_000CA	0.131

Figure 9.3: Documents with scores, returned from a search over a corpus

Information Retrieval systems usually perform some preprocessing on the input corpus in order to create the document-term matrix for the corpus. A document-term matrix is usually presented as:

where doc_i is a document from the corpus, $term_j$ is a word that is considered as important and representative for the document and $w_{i,j}$ is the weight assigned to the term in the document. There are many ways to define the term weight functions, but most often it depends on the term frequency in the document and in the whole corpus (i.e. the local and the global frequency).

Note that not all of the words appearing in the document are considered terms. There are many words (called "stop-words") which are ignored, since they are observed too often and are not representative enough. Such words are articles, conjunctions, etc. During the

	$Term_1$	$Term_2$	...	...	$term_k$
Doc1	$w_{1,1}$	$w_{1,2}$	...	...	$w_{1,k}$
Doc2	$w_{2,1}$	$w_{2,1}$	...	...	$w_{2,k}$
...
...
doc_n	$w_{n,1}$	$w_{n,2}$	...	...	$w_{n,k}$

Table 9.1:

preprocessing phase which identifies such words, usually a form of stemming is performed in order to minimize the number of terms and to improve the retrieval recall. Various forms of the same word (e.g. "play", "playing" and "played") are considered identical and multiple occurrences of the same term (probably "play") will be observed.

It is recommended that the user reads the relevant Information Retrieval literature for a detailed explanation of stop words, stemming and term weighting.

IR systems, in a way similar to IE systems, are evaluated with the help of the precision and recall measures (see Section 11.4 for more details).

9.8.1 Using the IR functionality in GATE

In order to run queries against a corpus, the latter should be "indexed". The indexing process first processes the documents in order to identify the terms and their weights (stemming is performed too) and then creates the proper structures on the local filesystem. These file structures contain indexes that will be used by Lucene (the underlying IR engine) for the retrieval.

Once the corpus is indexed, queries may be run against it. Subsequently the index may be removed and then the structures on the local filesystem are removed too. Once the index is removed, queries cannot be run against the corpus.

Indexing the corpus

In order to index a corpus, the latter should be stored in a serial datastore. In other words, the IR functionality is unavailable for corpora that are transient or stored in a RDBMS datastores (though support for the latter may be added in the future).

To index the corpus, follow these steps:

- Select the corpus from the resource tree (top-left pane) and from the context menu (right button click) choose "Index Corpus". A dialogue appears that allows you to

specify the index properties.

- In the index properties dialogue, specify the underlying IR system to be used (only Lucene is supported at present), the directory that will contain the index structures, and the set of properties that will be indexed such as document features, content, etc (the same properties will be indexed for each document in the corpus).
- Once the corpus is indexed, you may start running queries against it. Note that the directory specified for the index data should exist and be empty. Otherwise an error will occur during the index creation.

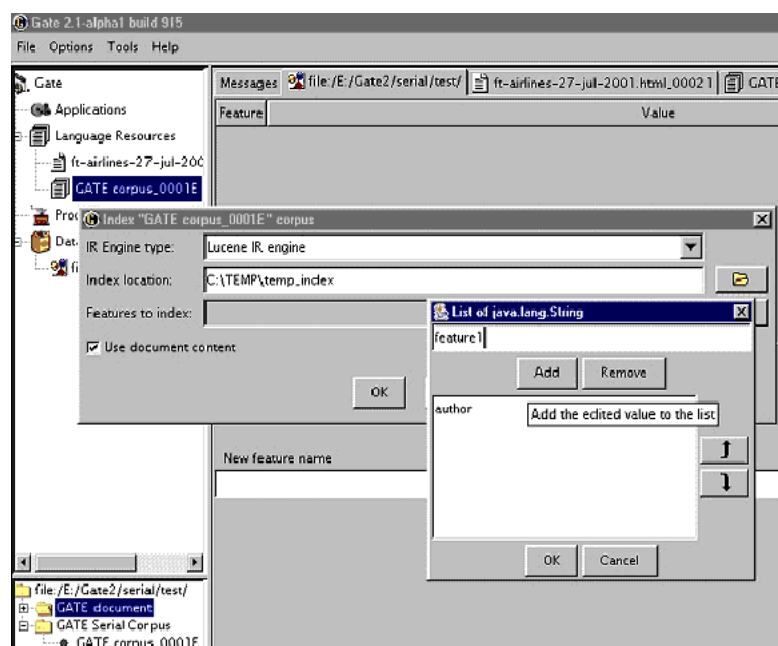


Figure 9.4: Indexing a corpus by specifying the index location and indexed features (and content)

Querying the corpus

To query the corpus, follow these steps:

- Create a SearchPR processing resource. All the parameters of SearchPR are runtime so they are set later.
- Create a pipeline application containing the SearchPR.
- Set the following SearchPR parameters:

- The corpus that will be queried.
- The query that will be executed.
- The maximum number of documents returned.

A query looks like the following:

```
{+/-}field1:term1 {+/-}field2:term2 ? {+/-}fieldN:termN
```

where field is the name of a index field, such as the one specified at index creation (the document content field is body) and term is a term that should appear in the field.

For example the query:

```
+body:government +author:CNN
```

will inspect the document content for the term "government" (together with variations such as "governments" etc.) and the index field named "author" for the term "CNN". The "author" field is specified at index creation time, and is either a document feature or another document property.

- After the SearchPR is initialized, running the application executes the specified query over the specified corpus.
- Finally, the results are displayed (see fig.1) after a double-click on the SearchPR processing resource.

Removing the index

An index for a corpus may be removed at any time from the "Remove Index" option of the context menu for the indexed corpus (right button click).

9.8.2 Using the IR API

The IR API within GATE makes it possible for corpora to be indexed, queried and results returned from any Java application, without using the GATE GUI. The following sample indexes a corpus, runs a query against it and then removes the index.

```
// open a serial data store  
SerialDataStore sds =  
Factory.openDataStore("gate.persist.SerialDataStore",  
"/tmp/datastore1");
```

```
sds.open();

//set an AUTHOR feature for the test document
Document doc0 = Factory.newDocument(new URL("/tmp/documents/doc0.html"));
doc0.getFeatures().put("author","John Smit");

Corpus corp0 = Factory.newCorpus("TestCorpus");
corp0.add(doc0);

//store the corpus in the serial datastore
Corpus serialCorpus = (Corpus) sds.adopt(corp0,null);
sds.sync(serialCorpus);

//index the corpus - the content and the AUTHOR feature

IndexedCorpus indexedCorpus = (IndexedCorpus) serialCorpus;

DefaultIndexDefinition did = new DefaultIndexDefinition();
did.setIrEngineClassName(gate.creole.ir.lucene.LuceneIREngine.class.getName());
did.setIndexLocation("/tmp/index1");
did.addIndexField(new IndexField("content", new DocumentContentReader(), false));
did.addIndexField(new IndexField("author", null, false));
indexedCorpus.setIndexDefinition(did);

indexedCorpus.getIndexManager().createIndex();
//the corpus is now indexed

//search the corpus
Search search = new LuceneSearch();
search.setCorpus(ic);

QueryResultList res = search.search("+content:government +author:John");

//get the results
Iterator it = res.getQueryResults();
while (it.hasNext()) {
    QueryResult qr = (QueryResult) it.next();
    System.out.println("DOCUMENT_ID="+ qr.getDocumentID() +",    score="+qr.getScore());
}
```

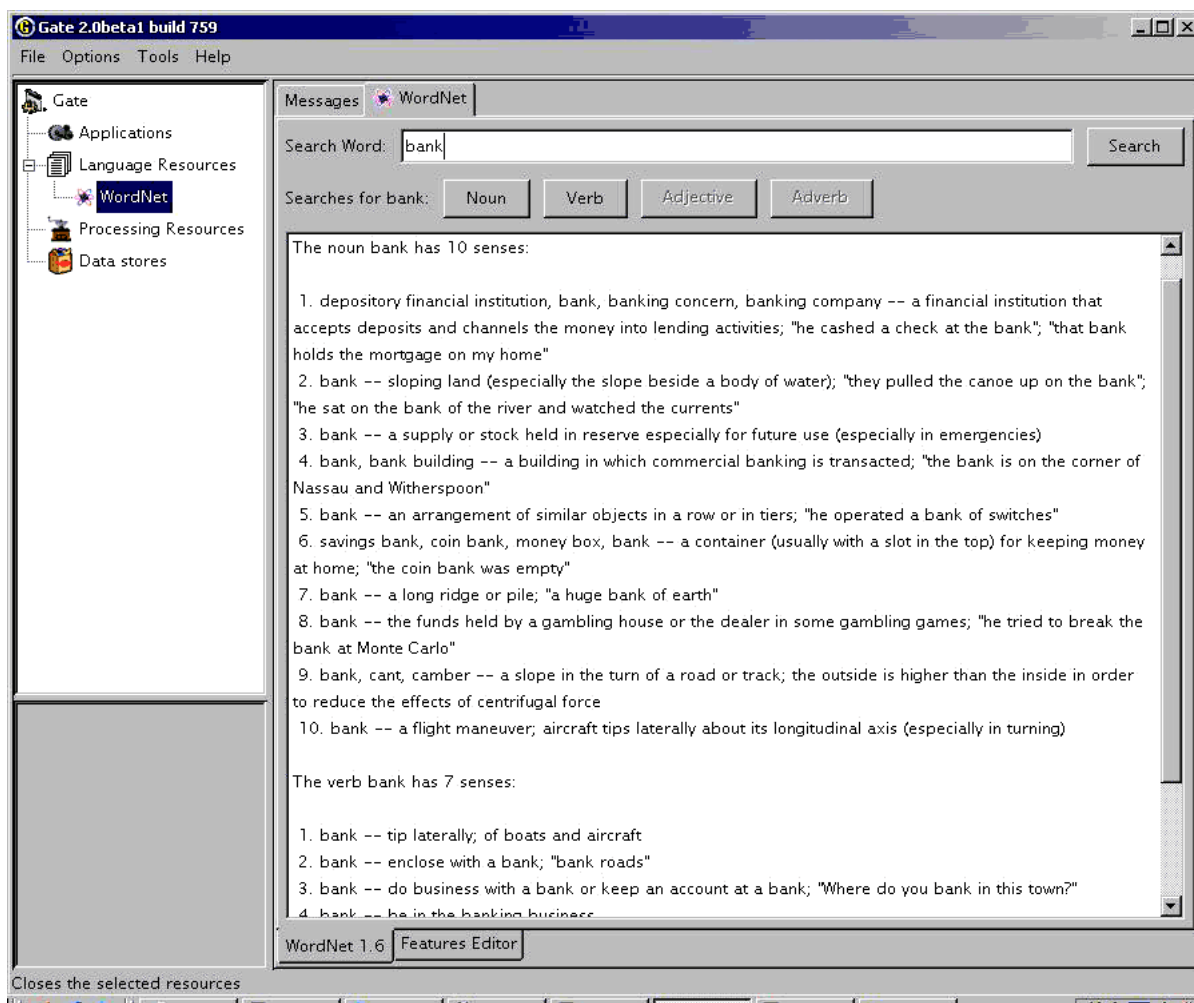



Figure 9.5: WordNet in GATE – results for “bank”

9.9 WordNet in GATE

At present GATE supports only WordNet 1.6, so in order to use WordNet in GATE, you must first install WordNet 1.6 on your computer. WordNet is available at <http://www.cogsci.princeton.edu/wn/index.shtml> The next step is to configure GATE to work with your local WordNet installation. Since GATE relies on the Java WordNet Library (JWNL) for WordNet access, this step consists of providing two special xml files that are used internally by JWNL. The first file is the DTD used by JWNL, and should be used as is, without any modifications. This looks like:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
```

```
<!ELEMENT jwnl_properties (dictionary , version , dictionary_element_factory , resou
```

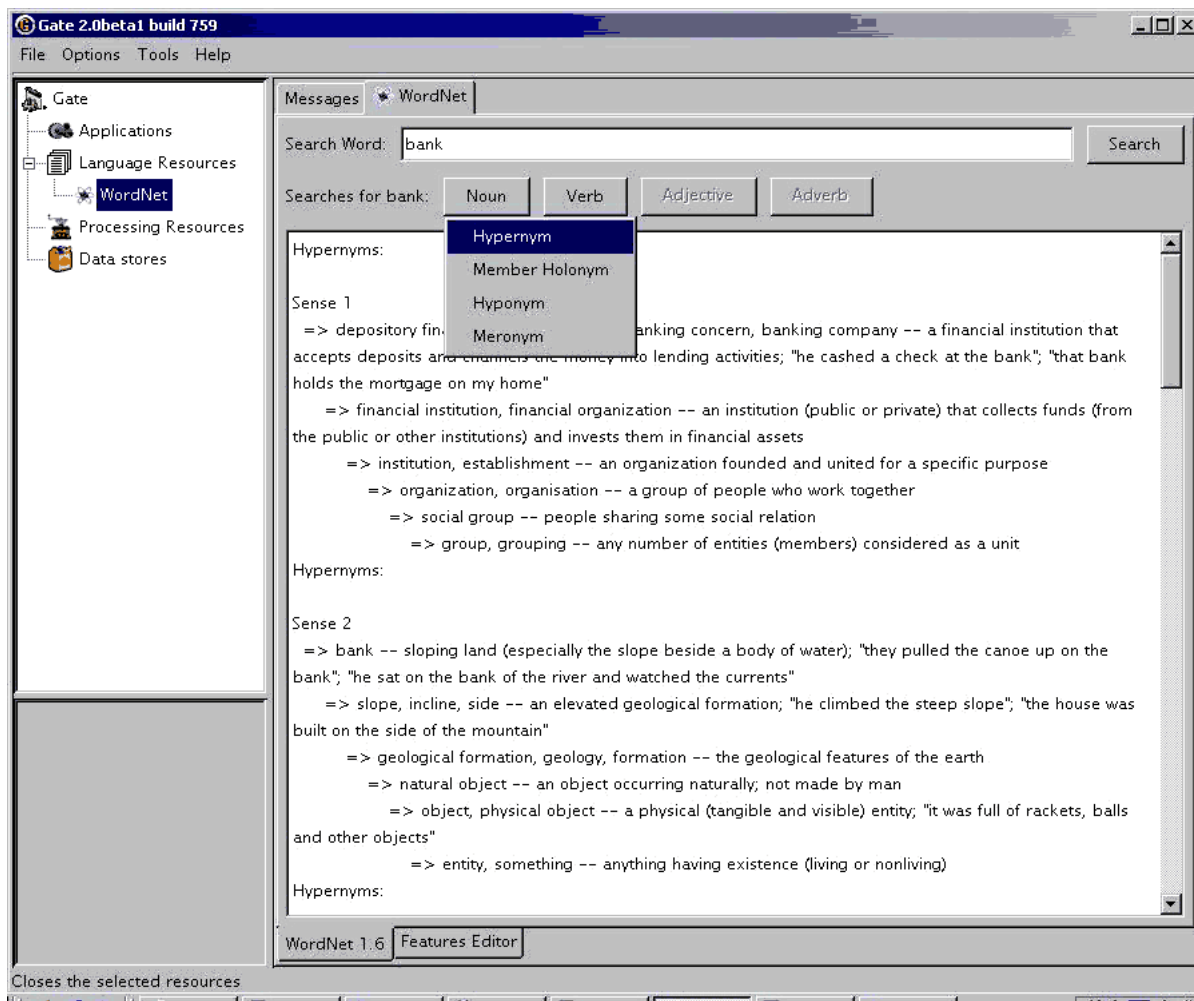


Figure 9.6: WordNet in GATE

```

<!ATTLIST jwnl_properties language CDATA #IMPLIED
                    country CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT dictionary (param*)>
<!ATTLIST dictionary class CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT param (param*)>
<!ATTLIST param name CDATA #IMPLIED
                value CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT version EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST version publisher CDATA #IMPLIED
                number CDATA #IMPLIED
                language CDATA #IMPLIED
                country CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT dictionary_element_factory (param*)>
<!ATTLIST dictionary_element_factory class CDATA #IMPLIED >

<!ELEMENT resource EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST resource class CDATA #IMPLIED >

```

The second xml file describes the location of the JWNL DTD and your local copy of the WordNet 1.6 index files. An example of this wn-config file is shown below:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<jwnl_properties language="en">
    <version publisher="Princeton" number="1.6" language="en"/>
    <dictionary class="net.didion.jwnl.dictionary.FileBackedDictionary">
        <param name="morphological_processor" value="net.didion.jwnl.diction
        <param name="file_manager" value="net.didion.jwnl.dictionary.file_ma
            <param name="file_type" value="net.didion.jwnl.princeton.fil
            <param name="dictionary_path" value="e:\wn16\dict"/>
        </param>
    </dictionary>
    <dictionary_element_factory class="net.didion.jwnl.princeton.data.PrincetonW
    <resource class="PrincetonResource"/>
</jwnl_properties>

```

After configuring GATE to use WordNet, you can start using the built-in WordNet browser or API. In GATE, load a creole repository (via the File menu) and type http://www.creolehome.net/_wordnet as the value of the URL. Then load WordNet by selecting it from the set of available language resources. Set the value of the parameter to the path of the xml properties file which describes the WordNet location (wn-config).

Once Word Net is loaded in GATE, the well-known interface of WordNet will appear. You can search Word Net by typing a word in the box next to to the label “SearchWord” and then pressing “Search”. All the senses of the word will be displayed in the window below. Buttons for the possible parts of speech for this word will also be activated at this point. For instance, for the word “play”, the buttons “Noun”, “Verb” and “Adjective” are activated. Pressing one of these buttons will activate a menu with hyponyms, hypernyms, meronyms for nouns or verb groups, and cause for verbs, etc. Selecting an item from the menu will display the results in the window below.

More information about WordNet can be found at <http://www.cogsci.princeton.edu/wn/index.shtml>

More information about the JWNL library can be found at <http://sourceforge.net/projects/jwordnet>

An example of using the WordNet API in GATE is available on the GATE examples page at <http://gate.ac.uk/GateExamples/doc/index.html>

9.9.1 The WordNet API

GATE offers a set of classes that can be used to access the WordNet 1.6 Lexical Base. The implementation of the GATE API for WordNet is based on Java WordNet Library (JWNL). There are just a few basic classes, as shown in Figure 9.7. Details about the properties and methods of the interfaces/classes comprising the API can be obtained from the JavaDoc. Below is a brief overview of the interfaces:

- **WordNet**: the main WordNet class. Provides methods for getting the synsets of a lemma, for accessing the unique beginners, etc.
- **Word**: offers access to the word’s lemma and senses
- **WordSense**: gives access to the synset, the word, POS and lexical relations.
- **Synset**: gives access to the word senses (synonyms) in the synset, the semantic relations, POS etc.
- **Verb**: gives access to the verb frames (not working properly at present)
- **Adjective**: gives access to the adj. position (attributive, predicative, etc.).
- **Relation**: abstract relation such as type, symbol, inverse relation, set of POS tags, etc. to which it is applicable.

- **LexicalRelation**
- **SemanticRelation**
- **VerbFrame**

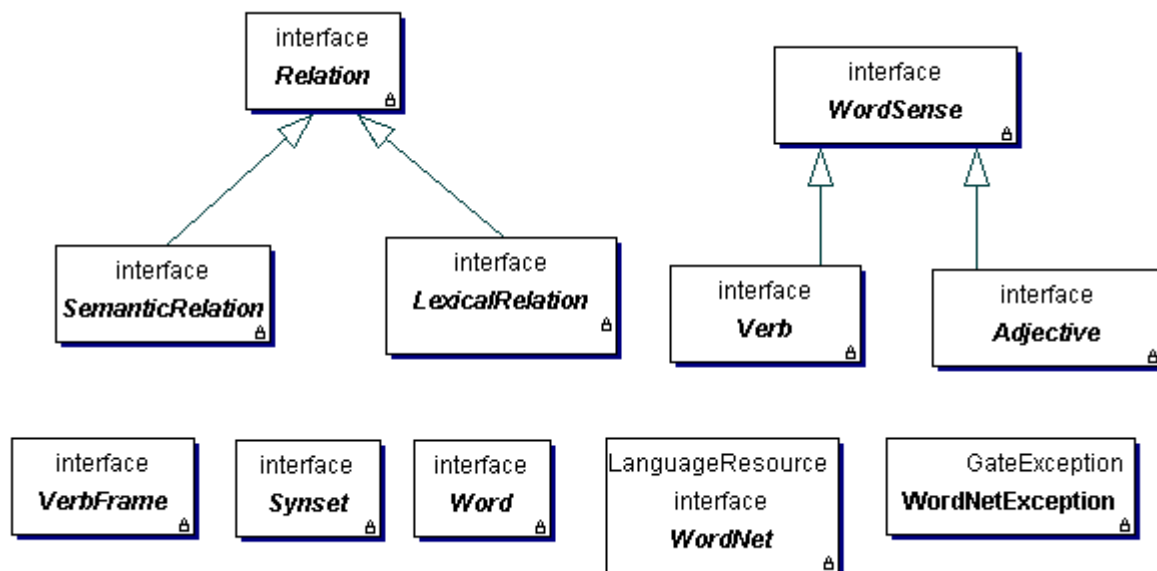


Figure 9.7: The Wordnet API

9.10 Machine Learning in GATE

9.10.1 ML Generalities

This section describes the use of Machine Learning (ML) algorithms in GATE.

An ML algorithm "learns" about a phenomenon by looking at a set of occurrences of that phenomenon that are used as examples. Based on these, a model is built that can be used to predict characteristics of future (and unforeseen) examples of the phenomenon.

Classification is a particular example of machine learning in which the set of training examples is split into multiple subsets (classes) and the algorithm attempts to distribute the new examples into the existing classes.

This is the type of ML that is used in GATE and all further references to ML actually refer to classification.

Some definitions

- **instance**: an example of the studied phenomenon. An ML algorithm learns from a set of known instances, called a dataset.
- **attribute**: a characteristic of the instances. Each instance is defined by the values of its attributes. The set of possible attributes is well defined and is the same for all instances in a dataset.
- **class**: an attribute for which the values need to be found through the ML mechanism.

GATE-specific interpretation of the above definitions

- **instance**: an annotation. In order to use ML in GATE the users will need to choose the type of annotations used as instances. Token annotations are a good candidate for this, but any type of annotation could be used (e.g. things that were found by a previously run JAPE grammar).
- **attribute**: an attribute can be either:
 - the presence (or absence) of a particular annotation type [partially] covering the instance annotation
 - the value of a named feature of a particular annotation type.

The value of the attribute can refer to the current instance or to an instance situated at a specified location relative to the current instance.

- **class**: any attribute can be marked as class attribute.

An ML implementation has two modes of functioning: training and application. The training phase consists of building a model (e.g. statistical model, a decision tree, a rule set, etc.) from a dataset of already classified instances. During application, the model built while training is used to classify new instances.

There are ML algorithms which permit the incremental building of the model (e.g. the Updateable Classifiers in the WEKA library). These classifiers do not require the entire training dataset to build a model; the model improves with each new training instance that the algorithm is provided with.

9.10.2 The Machine Learning PR in GATE

Access to ML implementations is provided in GATE by the "Machine Learning PR" that handles both the training and application of ML model on GATE documents. This PR is a Language Analyser so it can be used in all default types of GATE controllers.

In order to allow for more flexibility, all the configuration parameters for the ML PR are set through an external XML file and not through the normal PR parameterisation. The root element of the file needs to be called "ML-CONFIG" and it contains two elements: "DATASET" and "ENGINE". An example XML configuration file is given in Appendix E.

The DATASET element

The DATASET element defines the type of annotation to be used as instance and the set of attributes that characterise all the instances.

An "INSTANCE-TYPE" element is used to select the annotation type to be used for instances, and the attributes are defined by a sequence of "ATTRIBUTE" elements.

An ATTRIBUTE element has the following sub-elements:

- **NAME**: the name of the attribute
- **TYPE**: the annotation type used to extract the attribute.
- **FEATURE** (optional): if present, the value of the attribute will be the value of the named feature on the annotation of specified type.
- **POSITION**: the position of the annotation used to extract the feature relative to the current instance annotation.
- **VALUES**(optional): includes a list of VALUE elements.
- **<CLASS/>**: an empty element used to mark the class attribute. There can only be one attribute marked as class in a dataset definition.

Semantically, there are three types of attributes:

- **nominal attributes**: both type and features are defined and a list of allowed values is provided;
- **numeric**: both type and features are defined but no list of allowed values is provided; it is assumed that the feature can be converted to a number (a double value).
- **boolean**: no feature or list of values is provided; the attribute will take one of the "true" or "false" values based on the presence (or absence) of the specified annotation type at the required position.

Figure 9.8 gives some examples of what the values of specified attributes would be in a situation when "Token" annotations are used as instances.

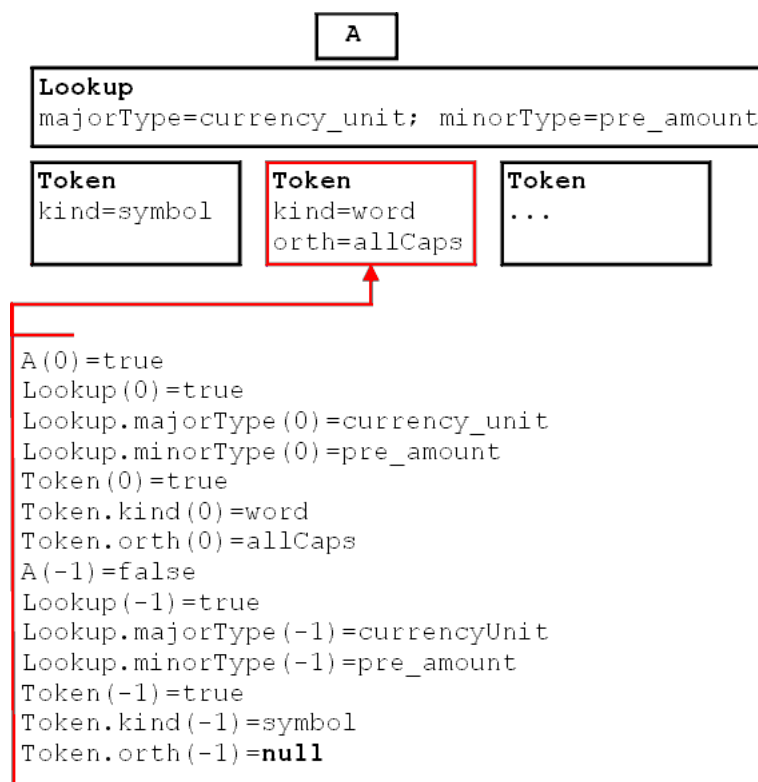


Figure 9.8: Sample attributes and their values

The ENGINE element

The ENGINE element defines which particular ML implementation will be used, and allows the setting of options for that particular implementation.

The ENGINE element has two sub-elements:

- **WRAPPER:** defines the class name for the ML implementation (or implementation wrapper). The specified class needs to extend `gate.creole.ml.MLEngine`.
- **OPTIONS:** the contents of the OPTIONS element will be passed verbatim to the ML engine used.

9.10.3 The WEKA Wrapper

GATE provides a wrapper for the WEKA ML Library (<http://www.cs.waikato.ac.nz/ml/weka/>) in the form of the `gate.creole.ml.weka.Wrapper` class.

Options for the WEKA wrapper

The WEKA wrapper accepts the following options:

- **CLASSIFIER**: the class name for the classifier to be used.
- **CLASSIFIER-OPTIONS**: the options string as required for the classifier.
- **CONFIDENCE-THRESHOLD**: a double value. If the classifier can provide a probability distribution rather than a simple classification then all possible classifications that have a probability value larger or equal to the confidence threshold will be considered.

9.10.4 Training an ML model with the ML PR and WEKA wrapper

The ML PR has a Boolean runtime parameter named "training". When the value of this parameter is set to true, the PR will collect a dataset of instances from the documents on which it is run. If the classifier used is an updatable classifier then the ML model will be built while collecting the dataset. If the selected classifier is not updatable, then the model will be built the first time a classification is attempted.

Training a model consists of designing a definition file for the ML PR, and creating an application containing an ML PR. When the application is run over a corpus, the dataset (and the model if possible) is built.

9.10.5 Applying a learnt model

Using the same ML PR, set the "training" parameter to false and run your application.

Depending on the type of the attribute that is marked as class, different actions will be performed when a classification occurs:

- if the attribute is boolean, a new annotation of the specified type will be created with no features;
- if the attribute is nominal or numeric, a new annotation of the specified type will be created with the feature named in the attribute definition having the value predicted by the classifier.

Once a model is learnt, it can be saved and reloaded at a later time. The WEKA wrapper also provides an operation for saving only the dataset in the ARFF format, which can be

used for experiments in the WEKA interface. This could be useful for determining the best algorithm to be used and the optimal options for the selected algorithm.

9.10.6 The MAXENT Wrapper

GATE also provides a wrapper for the Open NLP MAXENT library (<http://maxent.sourceforge.net/>). The MAXENT library provides an implementation of the maximum entropy learning algorithm, and can be accessed using the `gate.creole.ml.maxent.MaxentWrapper` class.

The MAXENT library requires all attributes except for the class attribute to be boolean, and that the class attribute be boolean or nominal. (It should be noted that, within maximum entropy terminology, the class attribute is called the 'outcome'.) Because the MAXENT library does not provide a specific format for data sets, there is no facility to save or load data sets separately from the model, but if there should be a need to do this, the WEKA wrapper can be used to collect the data.

Training a MAXENT model follows the same general procedure as for WEKA models, but the following difference should be noted. MAXENT models are not updateable, so the model will always be created and trained the first time a classification is attempted. The training of the model might take a considerable amount of time, depending on the amount of training data and the parameters of the model.

Options for the MAXENT Wrapper

- **CUT-OFF:** MAXENT features will only be included in the model if they occur at least this many times. (The default value of this parameter is zero.)
- **ITERATIONS:** The number of times the training procedure should iterate when finding the model's parameters (default is 10). In general no more than about 100 iterations should be needed to train a model, and it is recommended that less are used during development to allow for shorter training times.
- **CONFIDENCE-THRESHOLD:** Same as for the WEKA wrapper (see above). However, if this parameter is not set, or is set to zero, the model will not use a confidence threshold, but will simply return the most likely classification.
- **SMOOTHING:** Use smoothing when training the model. Smoothing can improve the accuracy of the learned models, but it will result in longer training times, and training will use more memory. The size of the learned models will also be larger. Generally smoothing will only improve performance for those models trained from small data sets with a few outcomes. With larger data sets with lots of outcomes, it may make performance worse.

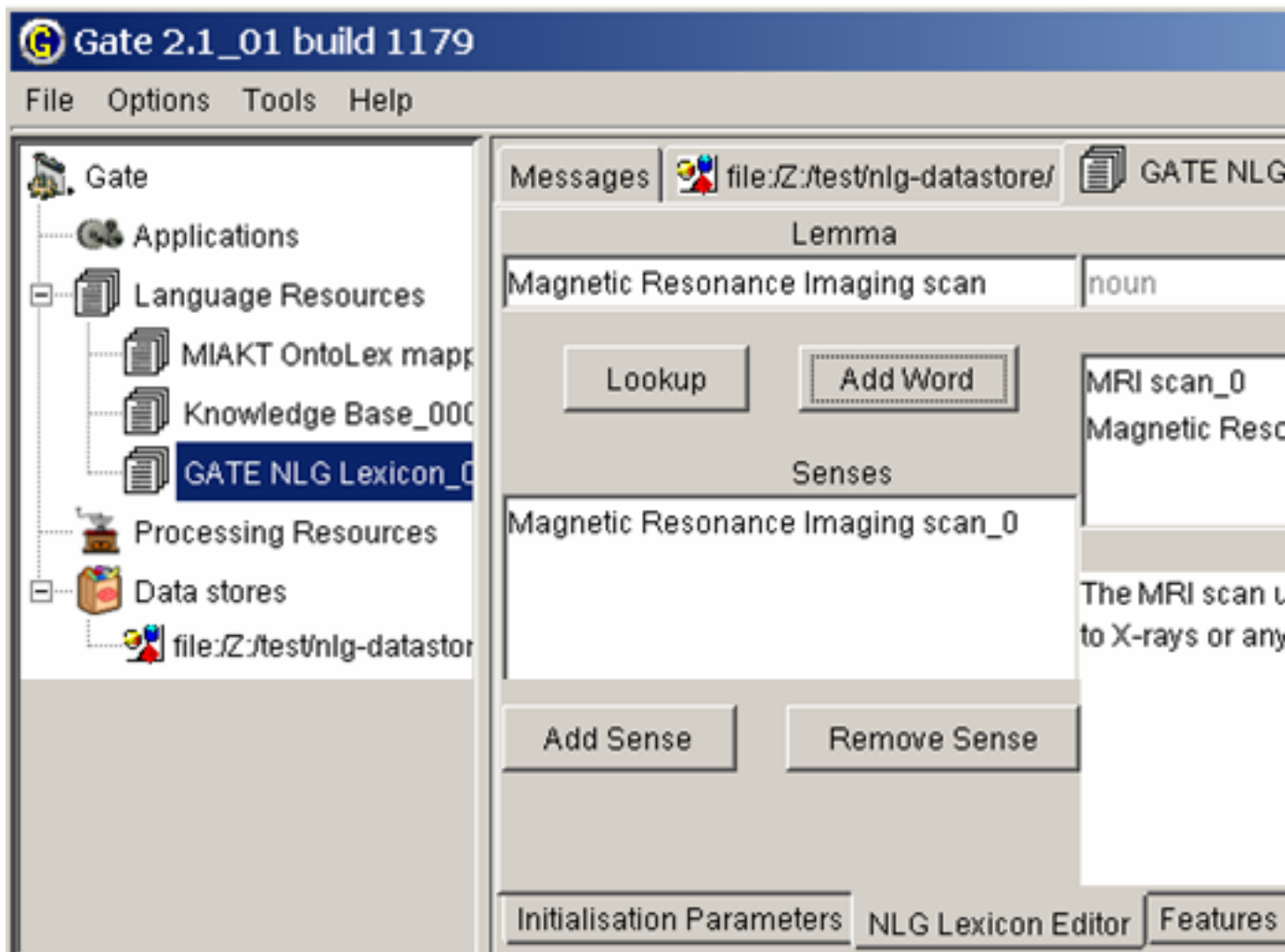


Figure 9.9: Example NLG Lexicon

- **SMOOTHING-OBSERVATION:** When using smoothing, this will specify the number of times that trainer will imagine that it has seen features which it did not see (default value is 0.1).
- **VERBOSE:** If selected, this will cause the classifier to output more details of its operation during execution.

9.11 MIAKT NLG Lexicon and Tools

In order to lower the overhead of NLG lexicon development, we have created graphical tools for editing, storage, and maintenance of NLG lexicons, combined with a model which connects lexical entries to concepts and instances in the ontology. GATE also provides access to existing general-purpose lexicons such as WordNet and thus enables their use in

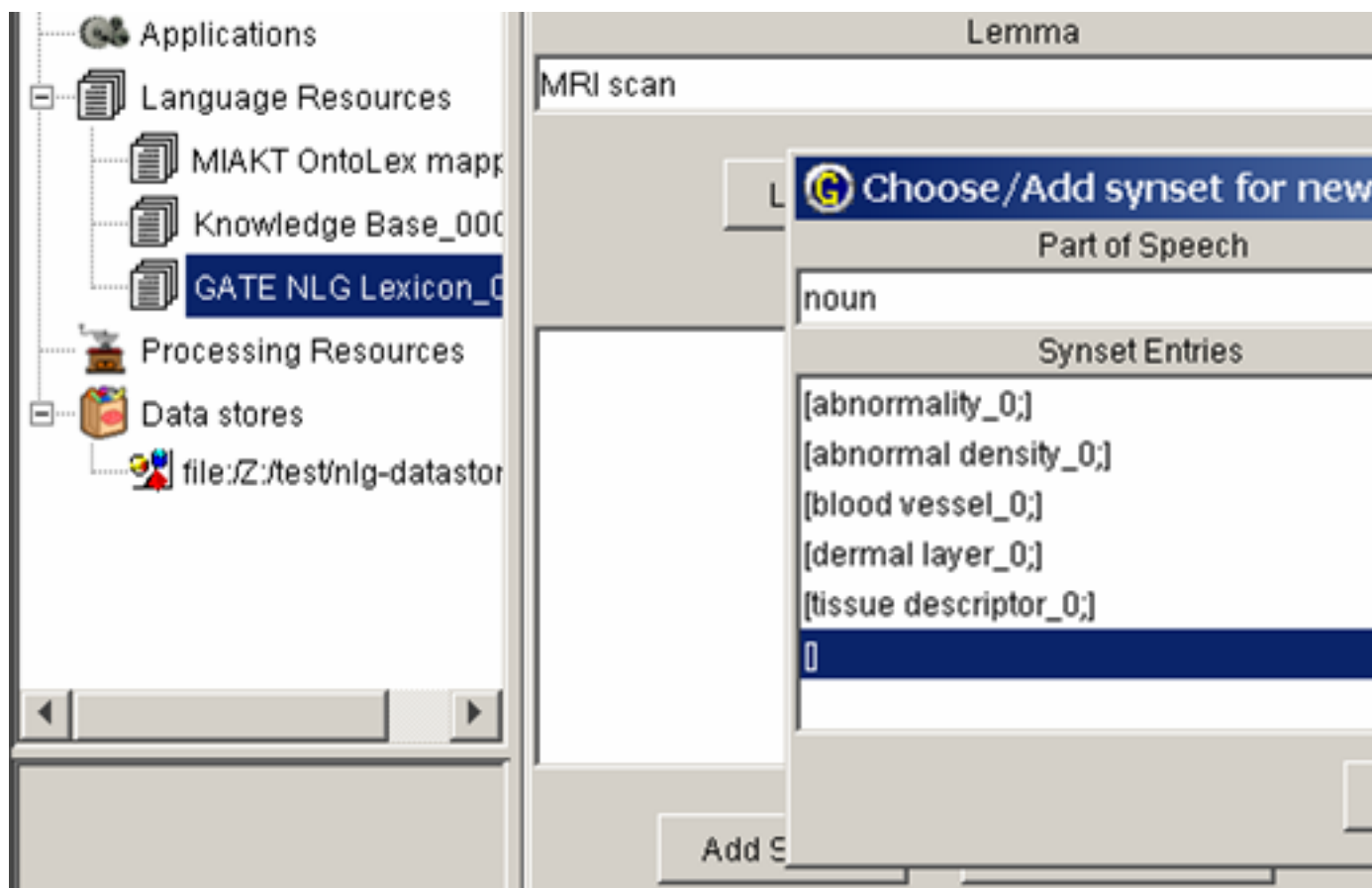


Figure 9.10: Editing synset information

NLG applications.

The structure of the NLG lexicons is similar to that of WordNet. Each lexical entry has a lemma, sense number, and syntactic information associated with it (e.g., part of speech, plural form). Each lexical entry also belongs to a *synonym set* or *synset*, which groups together all word senses which are synonymous. For example, as shown in Figure 9.9, the lemma “Magnetic Resonance Imaging scan” has one sense, its part of speech is noun, and it belongs to the synset containing also the first sense of the “MRI scan” lemma. Each synset also has a definition, which is shown in order to help the user when choosing the relevant synset for new word senses.

When the user adds a new lemma to the lexicon, it needs to be assigned to an existing synset. The editor also provides functionality for creating a new synset with part of speech and definition. (see Figure 9.10).

The advantage of a synset-based lexicon is that while there can be a one-to-one mapping between concepts and instances in the ontology and synsets, the generator can still use different lexicalisations by choosing them among those listed in the synset (e.g., MRI or Magnetic Resonance Imaging). In other words, synsets effectively correspond to concepts or instances

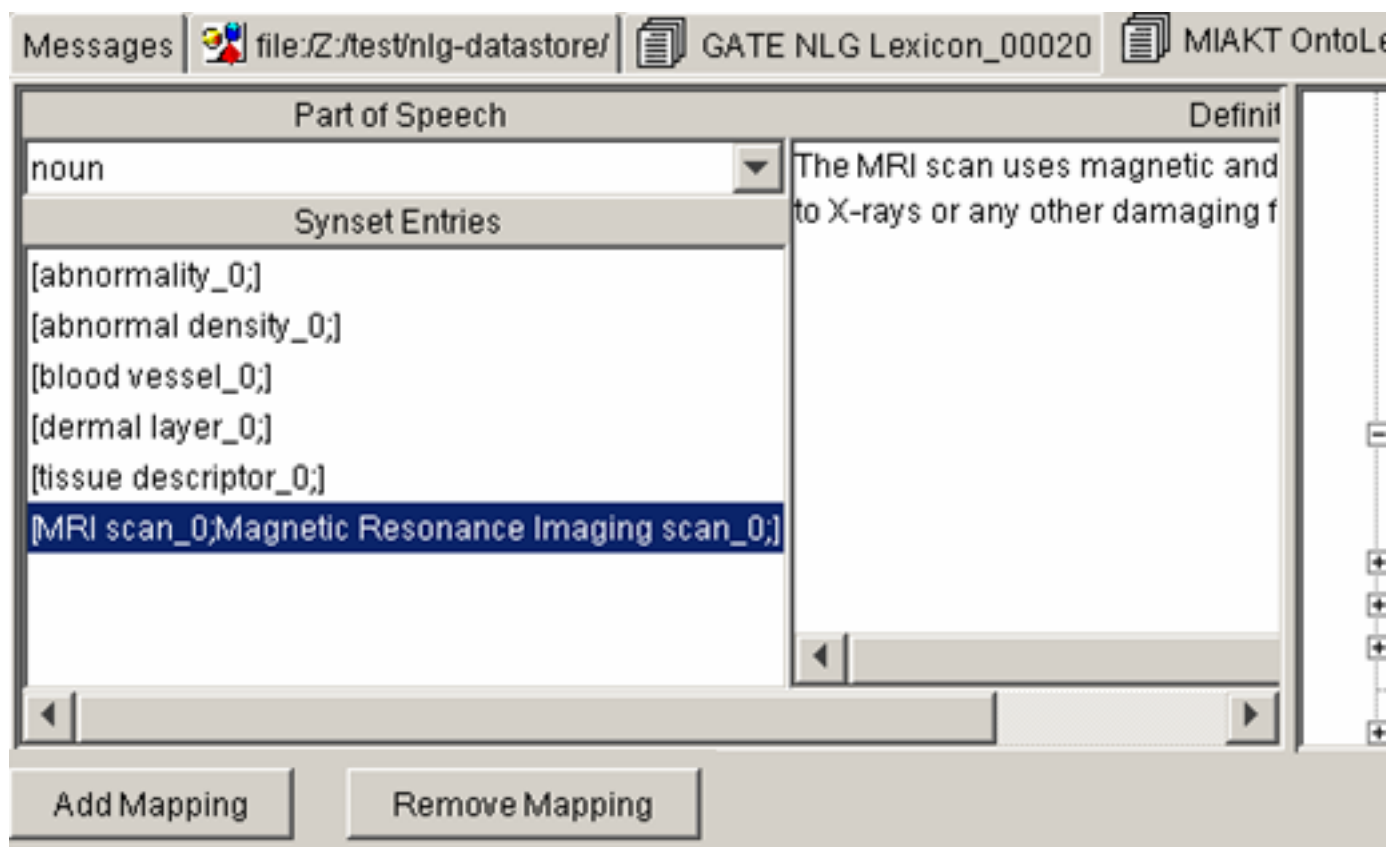


Figure 9.11: Mapping lexical entries to concepts and instances

in the ontology and their entries specify possible lexicalisations of these concepts/instances in natural language.

At present, the NLG lexicon encodes only synonymy, while other non-lexical relations present in WordNet like hypernymy and hyponymy (i.e., superclass and subclass relations) are instead derived from the ontology, using the mapping between the synsets and concepts/instances. The reason behind this architectural choice comes from the fact that ontology-based generators ultimately need to use the ontology as the knowledge source. In this framework, the role of the lexicon is to provide lexicalisations for the ontology classes and instances.

The mapping between synsets in the lexicon and concepts and instances in the ontology is done using a model, called *ontolex mapping*. This model supports polysemy and synonymy by allowing the same lexical entry to be mapped to different concepts/instances (polysemy) and many lexical entries to be mapped to the same concept/instance (synonymy). The model also has the corresponding user interface where the mappings can be edited, stored, and browsed (see Figure 9.11).

9.11.1 Complexity and Generality

The lexicon model was kept as generic as possible by making it incorporate only minimal lexical information. Additional, generator-specific information can be stored in a hash table, where values can be retrieved by their name. Since these are generator specific, the current lexicon user interface does not support editing of this information, although it can be accessed and modified programmatically.

On the other hand, the NLG lexicon is based on synonym sets, so generators which subscribe to a different model of synonymy might be able to access GATE-based NLG lexicons only via a wrapper mapping between the two models.

Given that the lexicon structure follows the WordNet synset model, such a lexicon can potentially be used for language analysis, if the application only requires synonymy. Our NLG lexicon model does not support yet the richer set of relations in WordNet such as hypernymy, although it is possible to extend the current model with richer relations. Since we used the lexicon in conjunction with the ontology, such non-linguistic relations were instead taken from the ontology.

The NLG lexicon itself is also independent from the generator's input knowledge and its format, i.e., is not restricted only to Semantic Web ontologies. The ontology-specific component is the ontalex mapping and its editor, because it relies explicitly on GATE's ontology model. In principle, any knowledge representation formalism with a similar expressive power as OWL Lite can be mapped to it and thus a generator using this KR formalism can benefit from the ontalex mapping tools, as well as the lexicon ones.

The need for a lexicon separate from the ontology and connected to it by a mapping model arises because most ontologies are not lexicalised, i.e., do not provide lexical information for their concepts and instances. For lexicalised ontologies like TAP (<http://tap.stanford.edu>) part of the NLG lexicon and the ontalex mapping can be derived automatically, although the remaining missing information (e.g., part of speech) will need to be added manually or from another lexicon.

Chapter 10

Working with Ontologies: LRs and VRs

10.1 Overview of GATE's Ontology API

Experience from a number of projects has shown that NLP systems need to deal with the different formats in which ontologies can be represented - DAML+OIL, OWL, RDF, etc. In order to avoid the cost of having to parse and represent ontologies in each of these formats in each NLP application, we created tools that can parse these formats and convert them into a common object-oriented model of ontologies with a unified API. GATE also provides a graphical user interface to enable browsing and editing of the ontologies, based on the common model, independent of their original format (see 6.6).

This approach has well-proven benefits, because it enables each application to use this format-independent model when dealing with ontologies, thus making the application immune to changes in the underlining ontology formats. If a new format needs to be supported, the application can automatically start using ontologies in this format, by simply including the correct tool that converts the format into the common model. From a language engineer's perspective the advantage is that they only need to learn one API and model, rather than having to learn many different and rather idiosyncratic ontology formats. This approach is similar to the way we deal with document formats.

Since OWL [Bechhofer *et al.* 03], DAML-OIL [Horrocks & vanHarmelen 01] and RDF(S) [Lassila & Swick 99] have different expressive powers, GATE's ontology model consists of a class hierarchy with growing level of expressivity. At the top is a taxonomy class which is capable of representing taxonomies of concepts, instances, and inheritance between them. Multiple inheritance is not supported.

At the next level is an ontology class which can represent also properties, i.e., relate concepts to other concepts or instances. Properties can have cardinality restrictions and be

symmetric and/or transitive. There are also methods providing access to their sub- and super-properties and inverse properties. The property model distinguishes between object (relating two concepts) and datatype properties (relating a concept and a datatype such as string or number).

The expressivity of this ontology model is aimed at being broadly equivalent to OWL Lite. In the case of a DAML-OIL ontology, GATE uses a sub-set of Jena's API to read in the model and populate the GATE ontology classes. Any features outside the GATE model are ignored. When reading RDFS, GATE only instantiates the information provided by the RDFS model, i.e., classes, instances, and properties between them, but without cardinality restrictions, etc. If the API is used to access one of these unsupported features then the API returns empty values.

10.2 Ontology-Aware JAPE Transducer

GATE now supports ontology aware grammar transduction. This allows a JAPE transducer (see Chapter 7) to match not only those features on the left hand side of a rule that match it exactly, but also to match any features that are subclasses of those specified in the JAPE rule. For example, if the ontology specifies that a BMW is a car, and that a car is a vehicle, then a rule that specifies vehicle will match when it finds an instance of BMW or car.

The standard JAPE transducer has an optional parameter, `ontology`, that allows the user to specify the ontology to be used in ontology aware grammar transduction. When using the transducer from the GATE GUI, the value of the ontology parameter should be set to an ontology that is already open within the GUI. It is only when matching the values of `class` features that the ontology will be used. However, the `class` features can be placed on annotations of any type. Referring to the above example, an annotation with feature `class=BMW` would be matched by a rule that looked for `class=vehicle`. In java code, the `class` feature should be referenced using the static final variable, `LOOKUP_CLASS_FEATURE_NAME`, that is defined in `gate.creole.ANNIEConstants`.

The ontology does not normally affect actions on the right hand side of JAPE rules, but when java is used on the right hand side, then the ontology becomes available for use by the java code. It is accessible via a local variable named `ontology`, which may be referenced from within the java code.

10.3 Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool

The Ontology-based Corpus Annotation Tool (OCAT) is a GATE plugin, which uses one or more ontologies for annotation. The required ontology can be selected from a pull-down list of available ontologies, and can be changed at any time during the annotation process.

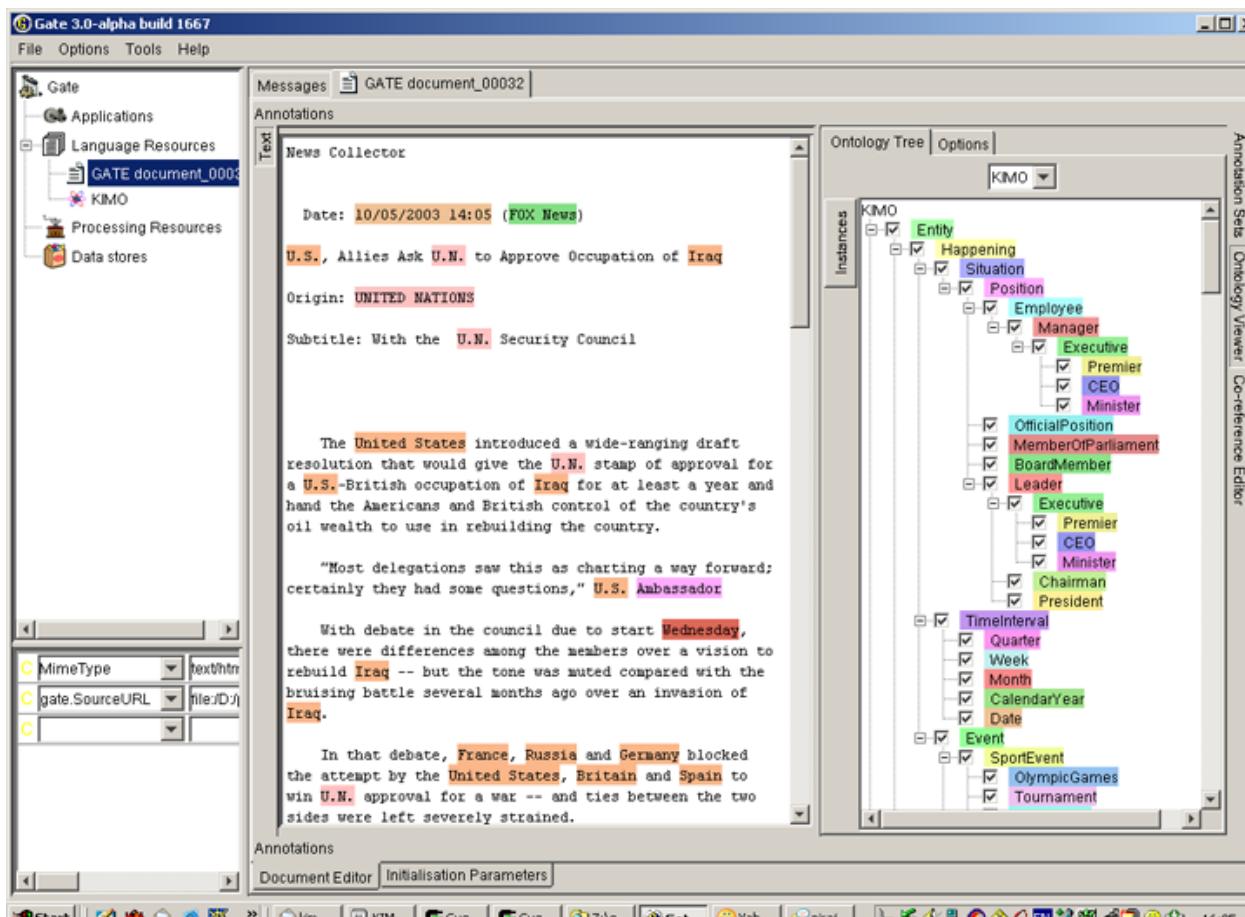


Figure 10.1: Viewing Ontology-Based Annotations

Version 1 of OCAT supports only annotation with information about the ontology class. Future versions will support annotation with instance information and properties.

10.3.1 Viewing Annotated Texts

Ontology-based annotations in the text can be viewed by selecting in the ontology tree the desired classes (see Figure ??). By default, when a class is selected, all of its sub-classes are also automatically selected and their mentions are highlighted in the text. There is an option to disable this default behaviour (see Section ??).

Figure 10.1 shows the mentions of each class in a different colour. These colours can be customised by the user by clicking on the class names in the ontology tree. It is also possible to expand and collapse branches of the ontology.

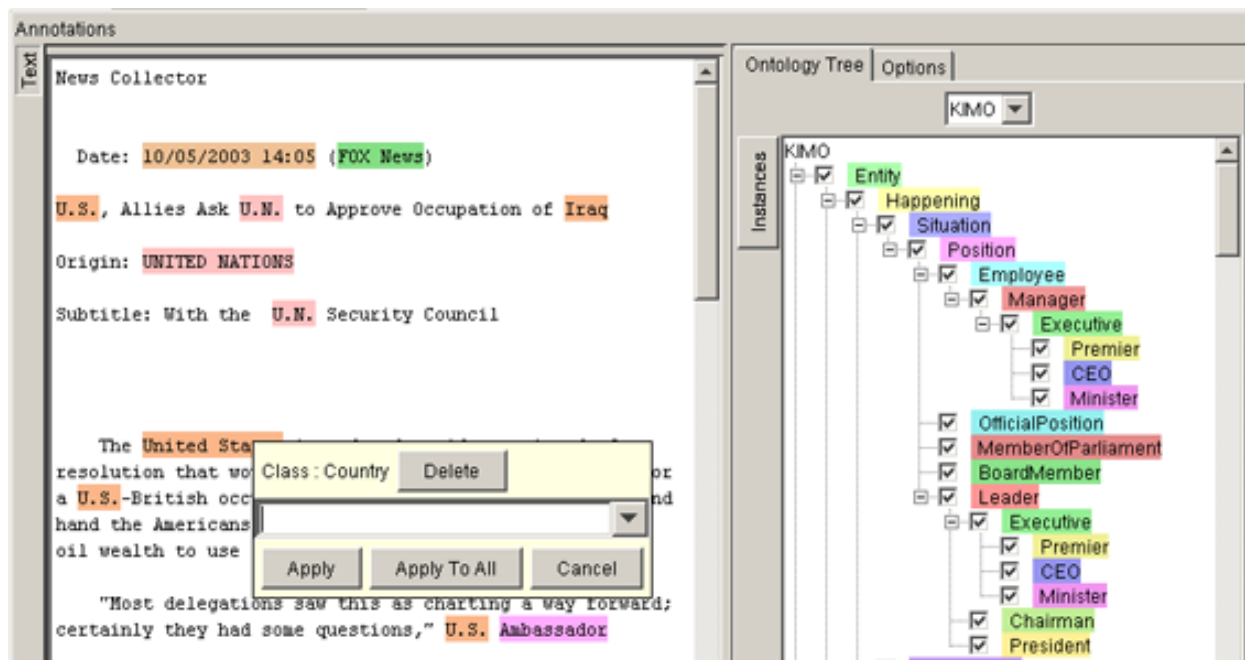


Figure 10.2: Editing Existing Annotations

10.3.2 Editing Existing Annotations

In order to view the class of a highlighted annotation in the text (e.g., United States - see Figure 10.2), hover the mouse over it and an edit dialog will appear. It shows the current class (Country in our example) and allows the user to delete it or change the class. To delete an existing annotation, press the Delete button.

A class can be changed by starting to type the name of the new class in the combo-box. Then it displays a list of class names, which start with the typed string. For example, if we want to change the type from Country to Location, we can type “Lo” and all classes which names start with Lo will be displayed. The more characters are typed, the fewer matching classes remain in the list. As soon as one sees the desired class in the list, it is chosen by clicking on it.

It is possible to apply the changes to all occurrences of the same string and the same previous class, not just to the current one. This is useful when annotating long texts. It is known as the “one sense per discourse” assumption, which is not always true. So the user needs to make sure that they still check the classes of annotations further down in the text, in case the same string has a different meaning (e.g., bank as a building vs. bank as a river bank).

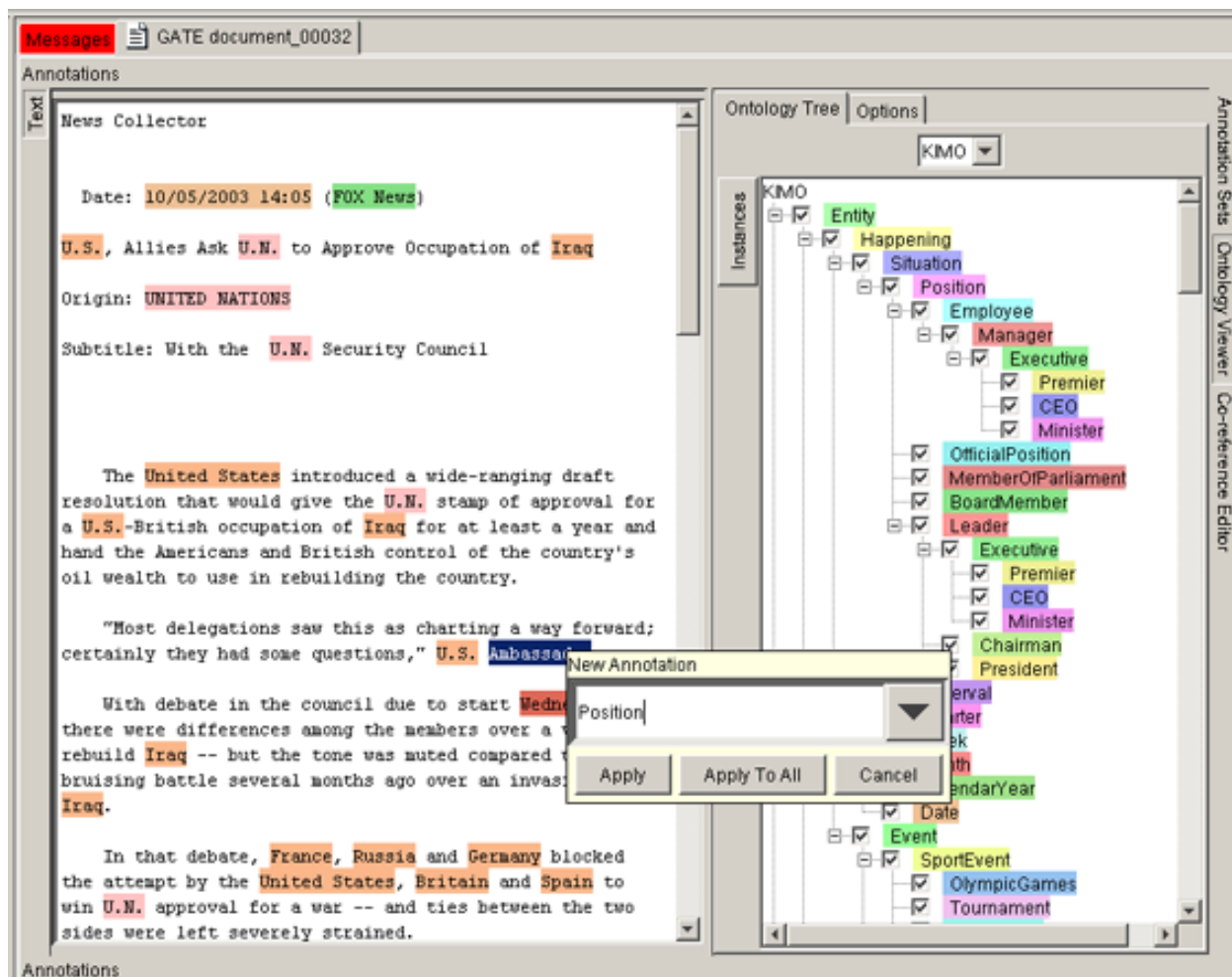


Figure 10.3: Add New Annotation Dialog

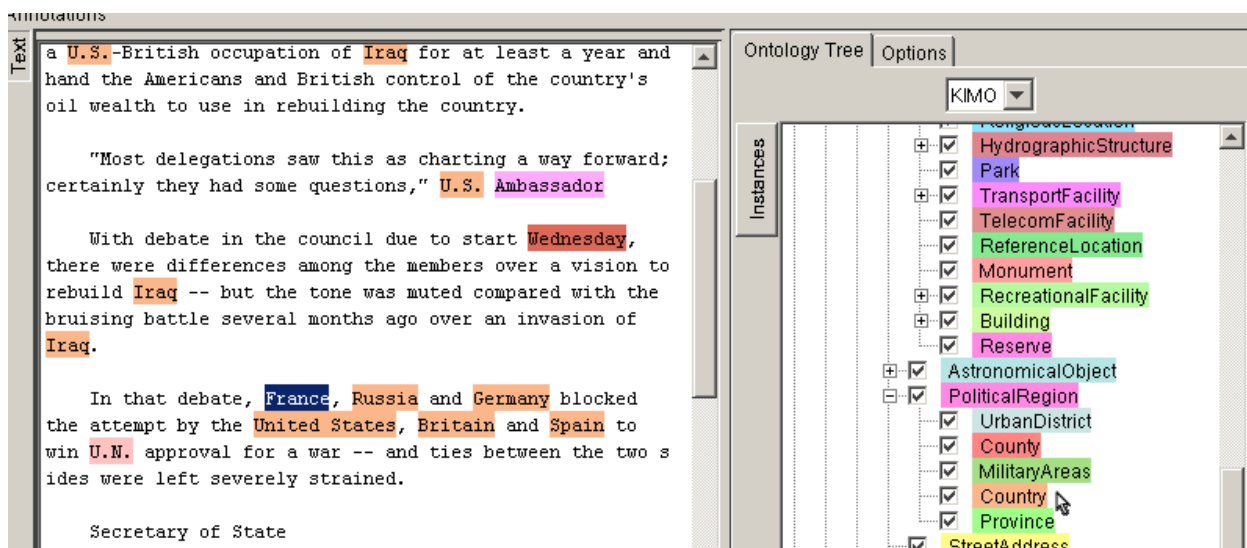


Figure 10.4: Adding New Annotation by Clicking

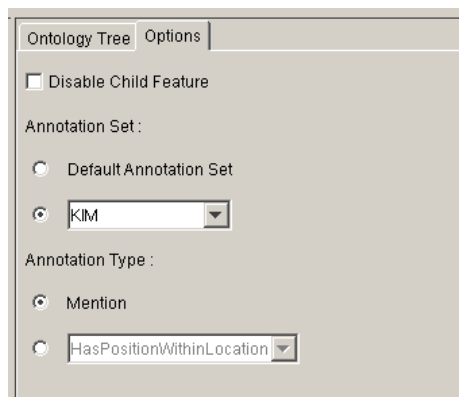


Figure 10.5: Tool Options

10.3.3 Adding New Annotations

New annotations can be added in two ways: using a dialogue (see Figure 10.3 or by selecting the text and clicking on the desired class in the ontology tree (see Figure 10.4).

When adding a new annotation using the dialogue, select a text and after a very short while, if the mouse is not moved, a dialogue will appear (see Figure 10.3). Start typing the name of the desired class, until you see it listed in the combo-box, then select it with the mouse. This operation is the same, as in changing the class of an existing annotation. One has the option of applying this choice to the current selection only or to all mentions of the selected string in the current document (Apply to All button).

10.3.4 Options

There are several options that control the OCAT behaviour (see Figure 10.5):

- **Disable child feature:** By default, when a class is selected, all of its sub-classes are also automatically selected and their mentions are highlighted in the text. This option disables that behaviour, so only mentions of the selected class are highlighted.
- **Annotation Set:** GATE stores information in annotation sets and OCAT allows you to select which set to use as input and output.
- **Annotation Type:** By default, this is annotation of type Mention, but that can be changed to any other name. This option is required because OCAT uses GATE annotations to store and read the ontological data. However, to do that, it needs a type (i.e., name) so ontology-based annotations can be distinguished easily from other annotations (e.g., tokens, gazetteer lookups).
- **Delete confirmation:** By default, OCAT deletes ontological information without asking for confirmation, when the delete button is pressed. However, if this leads to

too many mistakes, it is possible to enable delete confirmations from this option.

Chapter 11

Performance Evaluation of Language Analysers

When you can measure what you are speaking about, and express it in numbers, you know something about it; but when you cannot measure it, when you cannot express it in numbers, your knowledge is of a meager and unsatisfactory kind: it may be the beginning of knowledge, but you have scarcely in your thoughts advanced to the stage of science. (Kelvin)

Not everything that counts can be counted, and not everything that can be counted counts. (Einstein)

GATE provides two useful tools for automatic evaluation: the AnnotationDiff tool and the Benchmarking Tool. These are particularly useful not just as a final measure of performance, but as a tool to aid system development by tracking progress and evaluating the impact of changes as they are made. The evaluation tool (AnnotationDiff) enables automated performance measurement and visualisation of the results, while the benchmarking tool enables the tracking of a system's progress and regression testing.

11.1 The AnnotationDiff Tool

The AnnotationDiff tool enables two sets of annotations on a document to be compared, in order either to compare a system-annotated text with a reference (hand-annotated) text, or to compare the output of two different versions of the system (or two different systems). For each annotation type, figures are generated for precision, recall, F-measure and false positives. Each of these can be calculated according to 3 different criteria - strict, lenient and average. The reason for this is to deal with partially correct responses in different ways.

- The Strict measure considers all partially correct responses as incorrect (spurious).

- The Lenient measure considers all partially correct responses as correct.
- The Average measure allocates a half weight to partially correct responses (i.e. it takes the average of strict and lenient).

It can be accessed both from GUI or from the API. Annotation Diff compares sets of annotations with the same type. When performing the diff, the annotation offsets and their features will be taken into consideration. and after that, the diff process is triggered. Figure 11.1 shows a part of the AnnotationDiff viewer.

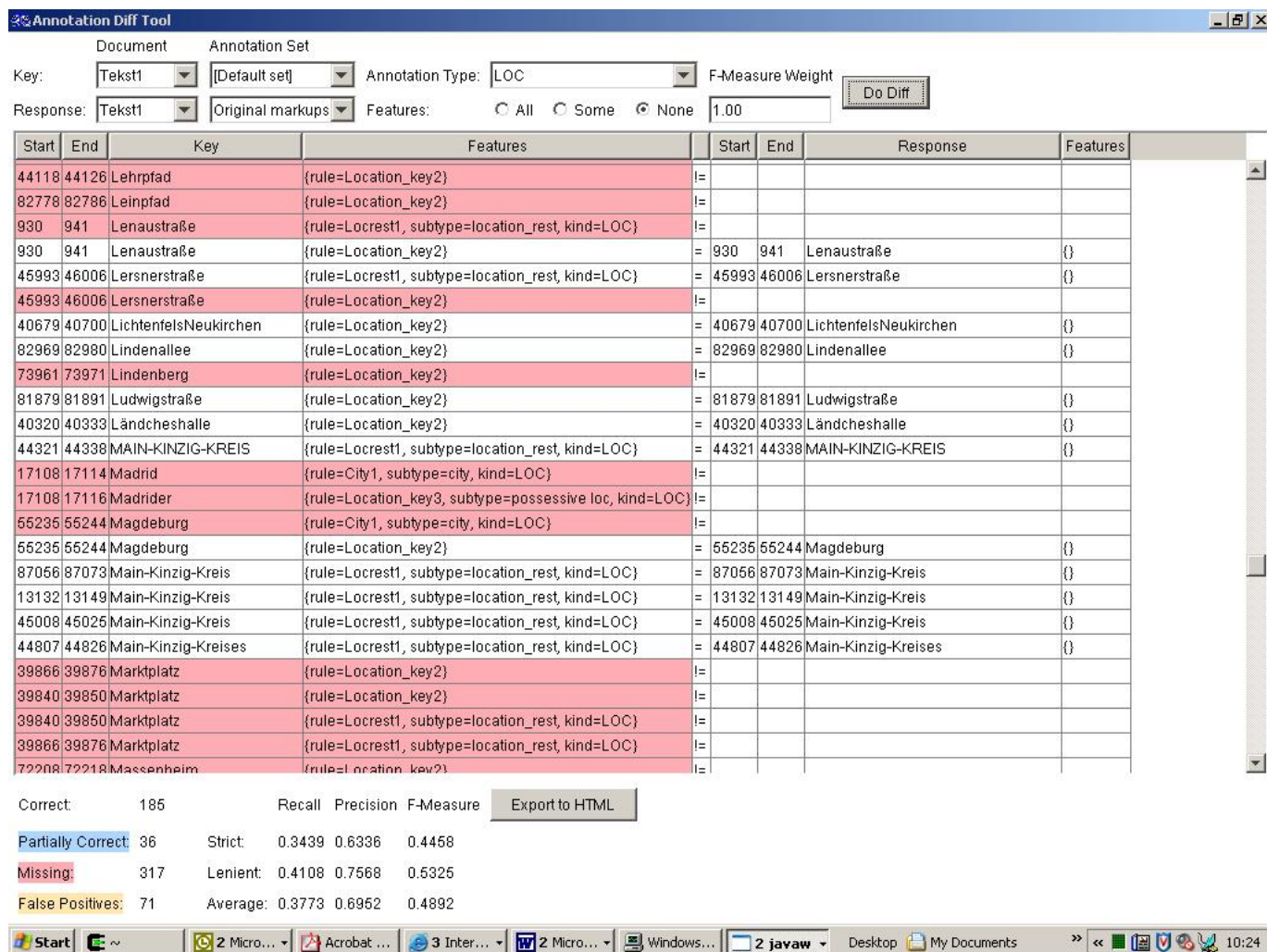


Figure 11.1: Part of the AnnotationDiff viewer

All annotations from the key set are compared with the ones from the response set, and those found to have the same start and end offsets are displayed on the same line in the table. Next, Annotation Diff evaluates if the features of each annotation from the response set subsume those features from the key set, as specified by the keyFeatureNamesSet parameter.

To understand this in more detail, see section 3.20, which describes the Annotation Diff parameters.

11.2 The six annotation relations explained

Coextensive

Two annotations are coextensive if they hit the same span of text in a document. Basically, both their start and end offsets are equal.

Overlaps

Two annotations overlap if they share a common span of text.

Compatible

Two annotations are compatible if they are coextensive and if the features of one (usually the ones from the key) are included in the features of the other (usually the response).

Partially Compatible

Two annotations are partially compatible if they overlap and if the features of one (usually the ones from the key) are included in the features of the other (response).

Missing This applies only to the key annotations. A key annotation is missing if either it is not coextensive or overlapping, or if one or more features are not included in the response annotation.

Spurious

This applies only to the response annotations. A response annotation is spurious if either it is not coextensive or overlapping, or if one or more features from the key are not included in the response annotation.

11.3 Benchmarking tool

The benchmarking tool differs from the AnnotationDiff in that it enables evaluation to be carried out over a whole corpus rather than a single document. It also enables tracking of the system's performance over time. The tool can be run in either GUI mode or standalone mode. For more information on how to run the tool, see 3.21.

The tool requires a clean version of a corpus (with no annotations) and an annotated reference corpus. First of all, the tool is run in generation mode to produce a set of texts annotated by

the system. These texts are stored for future use. The tool can then be run in three ways:

1. comparing the stored processed set with the human-annotated set;
2. comparing the current processed set with the human-annotated set;
3. (default mode) comparing the stored processed set with the current processed set and the human-annotated set.

In each case, performance statistics will be output for each text in the set, and overall statistics for the entire set. In the default mode, information is also provided about whether the figures have increased or decreased in comparison with the annotated set. The processed set can be updated at any time by rerunning the tool in generation mode with the latest version of the system resources. Furthermore, the system can be run in verbose mode, where for each P and R figure below a certain threshold (set by the user), the non-coextensive annotations (and their corresponding text) will be displayed. The output of the tool is written to an HTML file in tabular form, for easy viewing of the results (see Figure 11.2).

Annotation Type	Precision	Recall	Annotations
Annotation type: Organization	1.0 Precision increase on human-marked from 0.75 to 1.0	0.75 Recall increase on human-marked from 0.375 to 0.75	MISSING ANNOTATIONS in the automatic texts: ABC : [2849,2852] SPURIOUS ANNOTATIONS in the automatic texts: PARTIALLY CORRECT ANNOTATIONS in the automatic texts:
Annotation type: Person	0.9444444444444444 Precision increase on human-marked from 0.8947368421052632 to 0.9444444444444444	0.9444444444444444	
Annotation type: GPE	1.0	1.0 Recall increase on human-marked from 0.8571428571428571 to 1.0	

Figure 11.2: Fragment of results from benchmark tool

11.4 Metrics for Evaluation in Information Extraction

Much of the research in IE in the last decade has been connected with the MUC competitions, and so it is unsurprising that the MUC evaluation metrics of precision, recall

and F-measure [Chinchor 92] also tend to be used, along with slight variations. These metrics have a very long-standing tradition in the field of IR [van Rijsbergen 79] (see also [Manning & Schütze 99, Frakes & Baeza-Yates 92]).

Precision measures the number of correctly identified items as a percentage of the number of items identified. In other words, it measures how many of the items that the system identified were actually correct, regardless of whether it also failed to retrieve correct items. The higher the precision, the better the system is at ensuring that what is identified is correct.

Error rate is the inverse of precision, and measures the number of incorrectly identified items as a percentage of the items identified. It is sometimes used as an alternative to precision.

Recall measures the number of correctly identified items as a percentage of the total number of correct items. In other words, it measures how many of the items that should have been identified actually were identified, regardless of how many spurious identifications were made. The higher the recall rate, the better the system is at not missing correct items.

Clearly, there must be a tradeoff between precision and recall, for a system can easily be made to achieve 100% precision by identifying nothing (and so making no mistakes in what it identifies), or 100% recall by identifying everything (and so not missing anything). The **F-measure** [van Rijsbergen 79] is often used in conjunction with Precision and Recall, as a weighted average of the two. If the weight is set to 0.5, precision and recall are deemed equally important.

False positives are a useful metric when dealing with a wide variety of text types, because it is not dependent on *relative document richness*¹ in the same way that precision is.

When comparing different systems on the same document set, relative document richness is unimportant, because it is equal for all systems. When comparing a single system's performance on different documents, however, it is much more crucial, because if a particular document type has a significantly different number of any type of entity, the results for that entity type can become skewed. Compare the impact on precision of one error where the total number of correct entities = 1, and one error where the total = 100. Assuming the document length is the same, then the false positive score for each text, on the other hand, should be identical.

Common metrics for evaluation of IE systems are defined as follows:

$$Precision = \frac{Correct + 1/2Partial}{Correct + Spurious + 1/2Partial} \quad (11.1)$$

$$Recall = \frac{Correct + 1/2Partial}{Correct + Missing + 1/2Partial} \quad (11.2)$$

¹By this we mean the relative number of entities of each type to be found in a set of documents.

$$F - measure = \frac{(\beta^2 + 1)P * R}{(\beta^2 R) + P} \quad (11.3)$$

where β is a value between 0 and 1 reflecting the weighting of P vs. R. If β is set to 0.5, the two are weighted equally.

$$FalsePositive = \frac{Spurious}{c} \quad (11.4)$$

where c is some constant independent from document richness, e.g. the number of tokens or sentences in the document.

Note that we consider annotations to be partially correct if the entity type is correct and the spans are overlapping but not identical. Partially correct responses are normally allocated a half weight.

Chapter 12

Users, Groups, and LR Access Rights

“Well,” he said, “it’s to do with the project which first made the software incarnation of the company profitable. It was called Reason, and in its own way it was sensational.”

“What was it?”

“Well, it was a kind of back-to-front program. It’s funny how many of the best ideas are just an old idea back-to-front. You see there have already been several programs written that help you to arrive at decisions by properly ordering and analysing all the relevant facts so that they then point naturally towards the right decision. The drawback with these is that the decision which all the properly ordered and analysed facts point to is not necessarily the one you want.”

“Yeeees ...” said Reg’s voice from the kitchen.

“Well, Gordon’s great insight was to design a program which allowed you to specify in advance what decision you wished it to reach, and only then to give it all the facts. The program’s task, which it was able to accomplish with consummate ease, was simply to construct a plausible series of logical-sounding steps to connect the premises with the conclusion.

“And I have to say that it worked brilliantly. Gordon was able to buy himself a Porsche almost immediately despite being completely broke and a hopeless driver. Even his bank manager was unable to find fault with his reasoning. Even when Gordon wrote it off three weeks later.”

“Heavens. And did the program sell very well?”

“No. We never sold a single copy.”

“You astonish me. It sounds like a real winner to me.”

“It was,” said Richard hesitantly. “The entire project was bought up, lock, stock and barrel, by the Pentagon. The deal put WayForward on a very sound financial foundation. Its moral foundation, on the other hand, is not something I would

want to trust my weight to. I've recently been analysing a lot of the arguments put forward in favour of the Star Wars project, and if you know what you're looking for, the pattern of the algorithms is very clear.

“So much so, in fact, that looking at Pentagon policies over the last couple of years I think I can be fairly sure that the US Navy is using version 2.00 of the program, while the Air Force for some reason only has the beta-test version of 1.5. Odd, that.”

Dirk Gently's Holistic Detective Agency, Douglas Adams, 1987 (pp. 55-56).

This chapter describes the LR access mechanism which is implemented for persistent LRs. At present there are two LR persistency storage methods: Java serialisation and Oracle. Here we will describe their security features in turn.

12.1 Java serialisation and LR access rights

At present the security model is not implemented for Java serialization. One should rely on the security control offered by the OS in order to restrict access to certain persistent resources.

12.2 Oracle Datastore and LR access rights

Warning: These features will not work, unless you have an Oracle pre-installed at your site¹ and you, or an administrator at your site, has installed the GATE Oracle support (see <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/persistence.pdf>).

Oracle datastores have advanced LR access rights based on users and groups, which are similar to those in an operating system such as Linux.

In order to be able to access an LR stored in an Oracle datastore, a user needs to supply a user name, password and a group. These credentials are used to determine which LRs are accessible to this user for reading and writing.

12.2.1 Users, Groups, Sessions and Access Modes

The security model provides primitives such as users, groups, permissions and sessions similar to the ones provided by the operating systems:

¹Oracle installation is not provided with GATE. You need to purchase this product separately from Oracle Corp. (see <http://www.oracle.com>).

- **users** - they are identified by login name and password (each limited to 16 symbols). A user may be member of one or more groups.
- **groups** - identified by name (up to 128 symbols).
- **session** - each user must log into the datastore (by providing name, password and group) in order to use its resources. A session is opened when the user logs in. The default inactivity period after which the session expires and the user should log into the datastore again is 4 hours.
- **access modes** - there are four access modes in the present implementation. The access (Read/Write) to a resource according to its owner and access mode is shown in Table 12.1.

Mode	Owner (R/W)	Owner's group (R/W)	Other users (R/W)
World Read/ Group Write	+/+	+/+	+/-
Group Read/ Group Write	+/+	+/+	-/-
Group Read/ Owner Write	+/+	+/-	-/-
Owner Read/ Owner Write	+/+	-/-	-/-

Table 12.1: Access Modes

When GATE is configured for use with Oracle, a superuser and group are created:

- super user - ADMIN, password 'sesame'.
- administrative group - ADMINS.

The superuser is similar to the root user in Unix and has access to any resource despite its access mode. This user can also create or remove other users. We recommend that you change the password of the superuser immediately after you have installed the Oracle support for GATE.

12.2.2 User/Group Administration

Running the administration tool

When GATE Oracle tables are first created with the database install scripts, they only contain the ADMIN user which is the only user who can create and modify users and groups.² We do not recommend using the ADMIN user to store/access LRs in GATE.

²This user is similar to the root user in Unix operating systems.

Instead, immediately after installing Oracle support for GATE datastores, some users and groups must be created by running the `UserGroupEditor` tool. Before running this tool, the URL to the Oracle database needs to be specified in `gate.xml` (either the user's own or the site-wide `gate.xml`). An example entry is:

```
¡DBCONFIG url="jdbc:oracle:thin:GATEUSER/gate@example.dcs.shef.ac.uk:1521:gate101"  
url1="jdbc:oracle:thin:GATEUSER/gate@testdb.dcs.shef.ac.uk:1521:gate02" /¡
```

The example entry shows that there are two databases configured for this site, one at each URL. There is no limit to the number of Oracle databases one can have, but they all need to have an attribute starting with "url", e.g., `url1`, `url2`.

To run the tool, call the `gate` script with the `-a` parameter.

When the tool starts up, it first asks you to select which Oracle database you wish to administer. All databases defined in the `¡DBCONFIG¡` section of `gate.xml` will be shown in a listbox. Once the database is chosen, a login dialog is shown, asking for the user name, password and group of the `ADMIN` user. The initial password of the `ADMIN` user is `sesame` and the group is `ADMINS`. We advise that these are changed, the first time this tool is run.

If all login credentials are provided correctly, the graphical tool starts up:

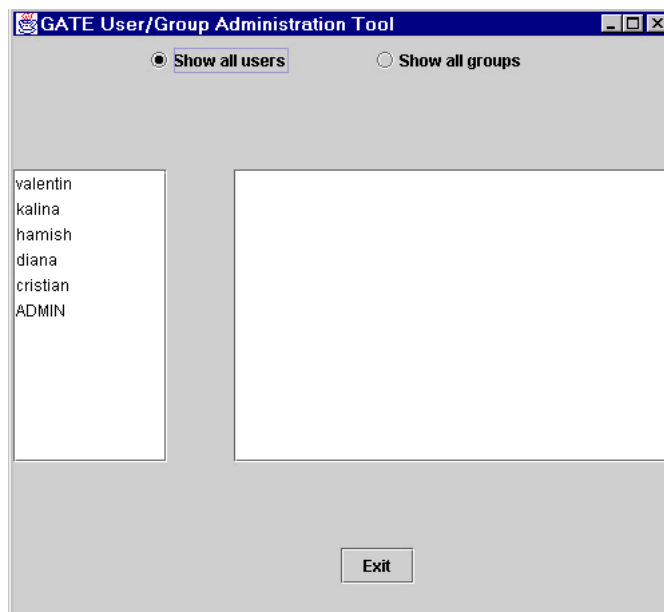


Figure 12.1: The User/Group Administration Tool

Viewing user and group information

As shown in Figure 12.1, the user/group administration tool (called the UG tool for the rest of this section) consist of two parallel lists. By default, the left one shows a list of all users in the database and the right one is empty.

To view the groups to which a particular user belongs, you need to select that user in the list. Then the right list displays this user's groups. If the list remains empty, then it means that this user does not belong to any group.

In order to view all groups which are available, you need to switch the tool to a **Users for groups** mode, by clicking on the corresponding radio button. This will switch the tool to showing the list of all groups in the left panel. When you select a given group, then the right panel shows all users who belong to that group (see Figure 12.2).

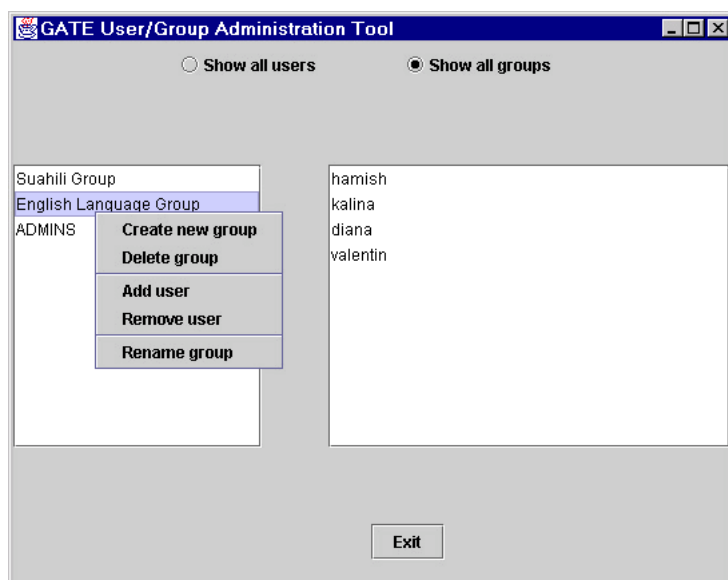


Figure 12.2: The tool in a group administration mode

User manipulation

Users are manipulated by selecting a user in the list of users and right-clicking on it to see the user manipulation menu. This menu allows the following actions:

Create new user: shows a dialog where the user name and password of the new user must be specified.

Delete user: delete the currently selected user.

Add to group: shows a dialog displaying all available groups. Select one to add the user to it.

Remove from group: in the given dialog, choose the group from which the user is to be removed.

Change password: shows a dialog where the new password can be specified;

Rename user: choose another name for the selected user.

All changes are automatically written to the Oracle database.

Group manipulation

Groups are manipulated by selecting a group in the list of groups and right-clicking on it to see the group manipulation menu. This menu allows the following actions:

Create new group: shows a dialog where the name of the new group must be specified.

Delete group: delete the currently selected group.

Add user: shows a dialog displaying all available users. Select one to add to the group.

Remove user: in the given dialog, choose the user to be removed.

Rename group: choose another name for the selected group.

All changes are automatically written to the Oracle database.

12.2.3 The API

In order to work with users and groups³ programmatically, you need to use an access controller, which is the class that provides the connection to the Oracle database. The access controller needs to be closed before application exit.

Once the connection is established, you need to create a session by providing the login details of the user (user name, password and group). Any user who can login, can use the accessor methods for users/groups, but only the **ADMIN** user has privileges to modify the data. The way to check whether the logged in user has the right to modify data, is to use the `isPrivilegedSession()` method (see below). If a mutator method is used with a non-privileged session, a `SecurityException` is thrown. All security-related classes and all their methods are documented in the GATE JavaDoc documentation, `java.security` package.

³See the latest API documentation online at: <http://gate.ac.uk/gate/doc/javadoc/index.html>. User and group API is located in the `gate.security` package.

```
AccessController ac = new AccessControllerImpl();
ac.open("jdbc:oracle:thin:GATEUSER/gate@machine.ac.uk:1521:GateDB");

Session mySession = null;
try {
    mySession = ac.login("myUser", "myPass", ac.findGroup("myGroup").getID());
} catch (gate.security.SecurityException ex) {
    ac.close();
    <print some error and exit>
}

//first check whether we have a valid session
if (! ac.isValidSession(mySession)){
    ac.close();
    <print some error and exit>
}

//then check that it is an administrative session
if (!mySession.isPrivilegedSession()) {
    ac.close();
    <print some error and exit>
}

User myUser = ac.findUser("myUser");
String myName = myUser.getName()
List myGroups = myUser.getGroups();
...
<more code to access/modify groups and users here>

//we're done now, just close the access controller connection
ac.close();
```

If you'd like to use a dialog, where the user can type those details, the session can be obtained by using the `login(AccessController ac, Component parent)` static method in the `UserGroupEditor` class. The login code would then look as follows:

```
mySession = UserGroupDialog.login(ac, someParentWindow);
```

For a full example of code using the security API, see `TestSecurity.java` and `UserGroupEditor.java`.

Appendices

Appendix A

Design Notes

Why has the pleasure of slowness disappeared? Ah, where have they gone, the amblers of yesteryear? Where have they gone, those loafing heroes of folk song, those vagabonds who roam from one mill to another and bed down under the stars? Have they vanished along with footpaths, with grasslands and clearings, with nature? There is a Czech proverb that describes their easy indolence by a metaphor: 'they are gazing at God's windows.' A person gazing at God's windows is not bored; he is happy. In our world, indolence has turned into having nothing to do, which is a completely different thing: a person with nothing to do is frustrated, bored, is constantly searching for an activity he lacks.

Slowness, Milan Kundera, 1995 (pp. 4-5).

GATE is a backplane into which specialised Java Beans plug. These beans are loose-coupled with respect to each other - they communicate entirely by means of the GATE framework. Inter-component communication is handled by model components - LanguageResources, and events.

Components are defined by conformance to various interfaces (e.g. LanguageResource), ensuring separation of interface and implementation.

The reason for adding to the normal bean initialisation mech is that LRs, PRs and VRs all have characteristic parameterisation phases; the GATE resources/components model makes explicit these phases.

A.1 Patterns

GATE is structured around a number of what we might call principles, or patterns, or alternatively, clever ideas stolen from better minds than mine. These patterns are:

- modelling most things as extensible sets of components (cf. Section A.1.1);
- separating components into model, view, or controller (cf. Section A.1.2) types;
- hiding implementation behind interfaces (cf. Section A.1.3).

Four interfaces in the top-level package describe the GATE view of components: `Resource`, `ProcessingResource`, `LanguageResource` and `VisualResource`.

A.1.1 Components

Architectural Principle

Wherever users of the architecture may wish to extend the set of a particular type of entity, those types should be expressed as components.

Another way to express this is to say that the architecture is based on *agents*. I've avoided this in the past because of an association between this term and the idea of bits of code moving around between machines of their own volition. I take this to be somewhat pointless, and probably the result of an anthropomorphic obsession with mobility as a correlate of intelligence. If we drop this connotation, however, we can say that GATE is an agent-based architecture. If we want to, that is.

Framework Expression

Many of the classes in the framework are components, by which we mean classes that conform to an interface with certain standard properties. In our case these properties are based on the Java Beans component architecture, with the addition of component metadata, automated loading and standardised storage, threading and distribution.

All components inherit from `Resource`, via one of:

- `LanguageResource` (LR) represents entities such as lexicons, corpora or ontologies;
- `VisualResource` (VR) represents visualisation and editing components that participate in GUIs;
- `ProcessingResource` (PR) represents entities that are primarily algorithmic, such as parsers, generators or ngram modellers.

A.1.2 Model, view, controller

According to Buschmann et al (Pattern-Oriented Software Architecture, 1996), the Model-View-Controller (MVC) pattern

...divides an interactive application into three components. The model contains the core functionality and data. Views display information to the user. Controllers handle user input. Views and controllers together comprise the user interface. A change-propagation mechanism ensures consistency between the user interface and the model. [p.125]

A variant of MVC, the Document-View pattern,

...relaxes the separation of view and controller... The View component of Document-View combines the responsibilities of controller and view in MVC, and implements the user interface of the system.

A benefit of both arrangements is that

...loose coupling of the document and view components enables multiple simultaneous synchronized but different views of the same document.

Geary (Graphic Java 2, 3rd Edtn., 1999) gives a slightly different view:

MVC separates applications into three types of objects:

- **Models:** Maintain data and provide data accessor methods
- **Views:** Paint a visual representation of some or all of a model's data
- **Controllers:** Handle events ... By encapsulating what other architectures intertwine, MVC applications are much more flexible and reusable than their traditional counterparts.

[pp. 71, 75]

Swing, the Java user interface framework, uses

a specialised version of the classic MVC meant to support pluggable look and feel instead of applications in general. [p. 75]

GATE may be regarded as an MVC architecture in two ways:

- directly, because we use the Swing toolkit for the GUIs;
- by analogy, where LR's are models, VR's are views and PR's are controllers. Of these, the latter sits least easily with the MVC scheme, as PR's may indeed be controllers but may also not be.

A.1.3 Interfaces

Architectural Principle

The implementation of types should generally be hidden from the clients of the architecture.

Framework Expression

With a few exceptions (such as for utility classes), clients of the framework work with the `gate.*` package. This package is mostly composed of interface definitions. Instantiations of these interfaces are obtained via the `Factory` class.

The subsidiary packages of GATE provide the implementations of the `gate.*` interfaces that are accessed via the factory. They themselves avoid directly constructing classes from other packages (with a few exceptions, such as JAPE's need for unattached annotation sets). Instead they use the factory.

A.2 Exception Handling

When and how to use exceptions? Borrowing from Bill Venners, here are some **guidelines** (with examples):

1. Exceptions exist to refer problem conditions up the call stack to a level at which they may be dealt with. "If your method encounters an abnormal condition *that it can't handle*, it should throw an exception." If the method can handle the problem rationally, it should catch the exception and deal with it.

Example:

If the creation of a resource such as a document requires a URL as a parameter, the method that does the creation needs to construct the URL and read from it. If there is an exception during this process, the GATE method should abort by throwing its own exception. The exception will be dealt with higher up the food chain, e.g. by asking the user to input another URL, or by aborting a batch script.

2. All GATE exceptions should inherit from `gate.util.GateException` (a descendant of `java.lang.Exception`, hence a checked exception) or `gate.util.GateRuntimeException` (a descendant of `java.lang.RuntimeException`, hence an unchecked exception). This rule means that clients of GATE code can catch all sorts of exceptions thrown by the system with only two catch statements. (This rule may be broken by methods that are not public, so long as their callers catch the non-GATE exceptions and deal with them or convert them to `GateException/GateRuntimeException`.) Almost **all** exceptions thrown by GATE should be checked exceptions: the point of an exception is that clients of your code get to know about it, so use a checked exception to make the compiler force them to deal with it. Except:

Example:

With reference to the previous example, a problem using the URL will be signalled by something like an `UnknownHostException` or an `IOException`. These should be caught and re-thrown as descendants of `GateException`.

3. In a situation where an exceptional condition is an indication of a bug in the GATE library, or in the implementation of some other library, then it is permissible to throw an unchecked exception.

Example:

If a method is creating annotations on a document, and before creating the annotations it checks that their start and end points are valid ranges in relation to the content of the document (i.e. they fall within the offset space of the document, and the end is after the start), then if the method receives an `InvalidOffsetException` from the `AnnotationSet.add` call, something is seriously wrong. In such cases it may be best to throw a `GateRuntimeException`.

4. Where you are inheriting from a non-GATE class and therefore have the exception signatures fixed for you, you may add a new exception deriving from a non-GATE class.

Example:

The SAX XML parser API uses `SaxException`. Implementing a SAX parser for a document type involves overriding methods that throw this exception. Where you want to have a subtype for some problem which is specific to GATE processing, you could use `GateSaxException` which extends `SaxException`.

5. Test code is different: in the JUnit test cases it is fine just to declare that each method throws `Exception` and leave it at that. The JUnit test runner will pick up the exceptions and report them to you. Test methods should, however, try and ensure that the exceptions thrown are meaningful. For example, avoid null pointer exceptions in the test code itself, e.g. by using `assertNonNull`.

Example:

```
public void testComments() throws Exception {
    ResourceData docRd = (ResourceData) reg.get("gate.Document");
    assertNotNull("testComments: couldn't find document res data", docRd);
    String comment = docRd.getComment();
    assert(
        "testComments: incorrect or missing COMMENT on document",
        comment != null && comment.equals("GATE document")
    );
} // testComments()
```

See also the testing notes.

6. "Throw a different exception type for each abnormal condition." You can go too far on this one - a hundred exception types per package would certainly be too much - but in general you should create a new exception type for each different sort of problem you encounter.

Example:

The `gate.creole` package has a `ResourceInstantiationException` - this deals with all problems to do with creating resources. We could have had `"ResourceUrlProblem"` and `"ResourceParameterProblem"` but that would probably have ended up with too many. On the other hand, just throwing everything as `GateException` is too coarse (Hamish take note!).

7. Put exceptions in the package that they're thrown from (unless they're used in many packages, in which case they can go in `gate.util`). This makes it easier to find them in the documentation and prevents name clashes.

Example:

`gate.jape.ParserException` is correctly placed; if it was in `gate.util` it might clash with, for example, `gate.xml.ParserException` if there was such.

Appendix B

JAPE: Implementation

The annual Diagram prize for the oddest book title of the year has been awarded to Gerard Forlin's Butterworths Corporate Manslaughter Service, a hefty law tome providing guidance and analysis on corporate liability for deaths in the workplace.

The book, not published until January, was up against five other shortlisted titles: Fancy Coffins to Make Yourself; The Flat-Footed Flies of Europe; Lightweight Sandwich Construction; Tea Bag Folding; and The Art and Craft of Pounding Flowers: No Paint, No Ink, Just a Hammer! The shortlist was thrown open to readers of the literary trade magazine The Bookseller, who chose the winner by voting on the magazine's website. Butterworths Corporate Manslaughter Service, a snip at 375, emerged as the overall victor with 35

The Diagram prize has been a regular on the award circuit since 1978, when Proceedings of the Second International Workshop on Nude Mice carried off the inaugural award. Since then, titles such as American Bottom Archaeology and last year's winner, High-Performance Stiffened Structures (an engineering publication), have received unwonted publicity through the prize. This year's winner is perhaps most notable for its lack of *entendre*.

Manslaughter Service kills off competition in battle of strange titles, Emma Yates, The Guardian, November 30, 2001.

This chapter gives implementation details and formal definitions of the JAPE annotation patterns language. Section B.1 gives a more formal definition of the JAPE grammar, and some examples of its use. Section B.2 describes JAPE's relation to CPSL. The next 3 sections describe the algorithms used, label binding, and the classes used. Section B.6 gives an example of the implementation; and finally, section B.7 explains the compilation process.

B.1 Formal Description of the JAPE Grammar

JAPE is similar to CPSL (a Common Pattern Specification Language, developed in the TIPSTER programme by Doug Appelt and others), with a few exceptions. Figure B.1 gives a BNF (Backus-Naur Format) description of the grammar.

An example rule LHS:

```
Rule: KiloAmount
( ({Token.kind == "containsDigitAndComma"}):number
  {Token.string == "kilograms"} ):whole
```

A basic constraint specification appears between curly braces, and gives a conjunction of annotation/attribute/value specifiers which have to match at a particular point in the annotation graph. A complex constraint specification appears within round brackets, and may be bound to a label with the “:” operator; the label then becomes available in the RHS for access to the annotations matched by the complex constraint. Complex constraints can also have Kleene operators (*, +, ?) applied to them. A sequence of constraints represents a sequential conjunction; disjunction is represented by separating constraints with “|”.

Converted to the format accepted by the JavaCC LL parser generator, the most significant fragment of the CPSL grammar (as described by Appelt, based on an original specification from a TIPSTER working group chaired by Boyan Onyshkevych) goes like this:

```
constraintGroup -->
    (patternElement)+ ("|" (patternElement)+ )*

patternElement -->
    "{" constraint ("," constraint)* "}"
|   "(" constraintGroup ")" (kleeneOp)? (binding)?
```

Here the first line of `patternElement` is a basic constraint, the second a complex one.

```

MultiPhaseTransducer ::=
  ( <multiphase> <ident> )?
  ( ( SinglePhaseTransducer )+ | ( <phases> ( <ident> )+ ) )
  <EOF>
SinglePhaseTransducer ::=
  <phase> <ident> ( <input> ( <ident> )* )?
  ( <option> ( <ident> <assign> <ident> )* )?
  ( ( Rule ) | MacroDef )*
Rule ::=
  <rule> <ident> ( <priority> <integer> )?
  LeftHandSide "-->" RightHandSide
MacroDef ::=
  <macro> <ident> ( PatternElement | Action )
LeftHandSide ::=
  ConstraintGroup
ConstraintGroup ::=
  ( PatternElement )+ ( <bar> ( PatternElement )+ )*
PatternElement ::=
  ( <ident> | BasicPatternElement | ComplexPatternElement )
BasicPatternElement ::=
  ( ( <leftBrace> Constraint ( <comma> Constraint )* <rightBrace> )
    | ( <string> ) )
ComplexPatternElement ::=
  <leftBracket> ConstraintGroup <rightBracket>
  ( <kleeneOp> )? ( <colon> ( <ident> | <integer> ) )?
Constraint ::=
  ( <pling> )? <ident> ( <period> <ident> <equals> AttrVal )?
AttrVal ::=
  ( <string> | <ident> | <integer> | <floatingPoint> | <bool> )
RightHandSide ::=
  Action ( <comma> Action )*
Action ::=
  ( NamedJavaBlock | AnonymousJavaBlock | AssignmentExpression | <ident> )
NamedJavaBlock ::=
  <colon> <ident> <leftBrace> ConsumeBlock
AnonymousJavaBlock ::=
  <leftBrace> ConsumeBlock
AssignmentExpression ::=
  ( <colon> | <colonplus> ) <ident> <period> <ident>
  <assign> <leftBrace> (
    <ident> <assign>
    ( AttrVal | ( <colon> <ident> <period> <ident> <period> <ident> ) )
    ( <comma> )?
  )* <rightBrace>
ConsumeBlock ::=
  Java code

```

Figure B.1: BNF of JAPE's grammar

An example of a complete rule:

```
Rule: NumbersAndUnit
( ( {Token.kind == "number"} )+:numbers {Token.kind == "unit"} )
-->
:numbers.Name = { rule = "NumbersAndUnit" }
```

This says ‘match sequences of numbers followed by a unit; create a Name annotation across the span of the numbers, and attribute rule with value NumbersAndUnit’.

B.2 Relation to CPSL

We *differ from the CPSL spec* in various ways:

1. No pre- or post-fix context is allowed on the LHS.
2. No function calls on the LHS.
3. No string shorthand on the LHS.
4. We have two rule application algorithms (one like TextPro, one like Brill/Mitre). See section B.3.
5. Expressions relating to labels unbound on the LHS are not evaluated on the RHS. (In TextPro they evaluate to “false”.) See the binding scheme description in section B.4.
6. JAPE allows arbitrary Java code on the RHS.
7. JAPE has a different macro syntax, and allows macros for both the RHS and LHS.
8. JAPE grammars are compiled and stored as serialised Java objects.

Apart from this, it is a full implementation of CPSL, and the formal power of the languages is the same (except that a JAPE RHS can delete annotations, which straight CPSL cannot). The rule LHS is a regular language over annotations; the rule RHS can perform arbitrary transformations on annotations, but the RHS is only fired *after* the LHS been evaluated, and the effects of a rule application can only be referenced after the phase in which it occurs, so the recognition power is no more than regular.

B.3 Algorithms for JAPE Rule Application

JAPE rules are applied in one of two ways: Brill-style, where each rule is applied at every point in the document at which it matches; Appelt-style, where only the longest matching rule is applied at any point where more than one might apply.

In the Appelt case, the rule set for a phase may be considered as a single disjunctive expression (and an efficient implementation would construct a single automaton to recognise the whole rule set). To solve this problem, we need to employ two algorithms:

- one that takes as input a CPSL representation and builds a machine capable of recognizing the situations that match the rules and makes the bindings that occur each time a rule is applied. This machine is a Finite State Machine (FSM), somewhat similar to a lexical analyser (a deterministic finite state automaton).
- another one that uses the FSM built by the above algorithm and traverses the annotation graph in order to find the situations that the FSM can recognise.

B.3.1 The first algorithm

The first step that needs to be taken in order to create the FSM is to read the CPSL description from the external file(s). This is already done in the old version of Jape.

The second step is to build a nondeterministic FSM from the java objects resulted from the parsing process. This FSM will have one initial state and a set of final states, each of them being associated to one rule (this way we know what RHS we have to execute in case of a match). The nondeterministic FSM will also have empty transitions (arcs labeled with **nil**). In order to build this FSM we will need to implement a version of the algorithm used to convert regular expressions in NFAs.

Finally, this nondeterministic FSM will have to be converted to a deterministic one. The deterministic FSM will have more states (in the worst case $s!$ (where s is the number of states in the nondeterministic one); this case is very improbable) but will be more efficient because it will not have to backtrack.

Let **NFSM** be the nondeterministic FSM and **DFSM** the deterministic one.

The issues that have to be addressed are:

The NFSM will basically be a big OR. This means that it will have an initial state from which empty transitions will lead to the sub-FSMs associated to each rule (see Fig. B.2). When the NFSM is converted to a DFSM the initial state will be the set containing all the initial states of the FSMs associated to each rule. From that state we will have to compute the possible transitions. For this, the classical algorithm requires us to check for each possible

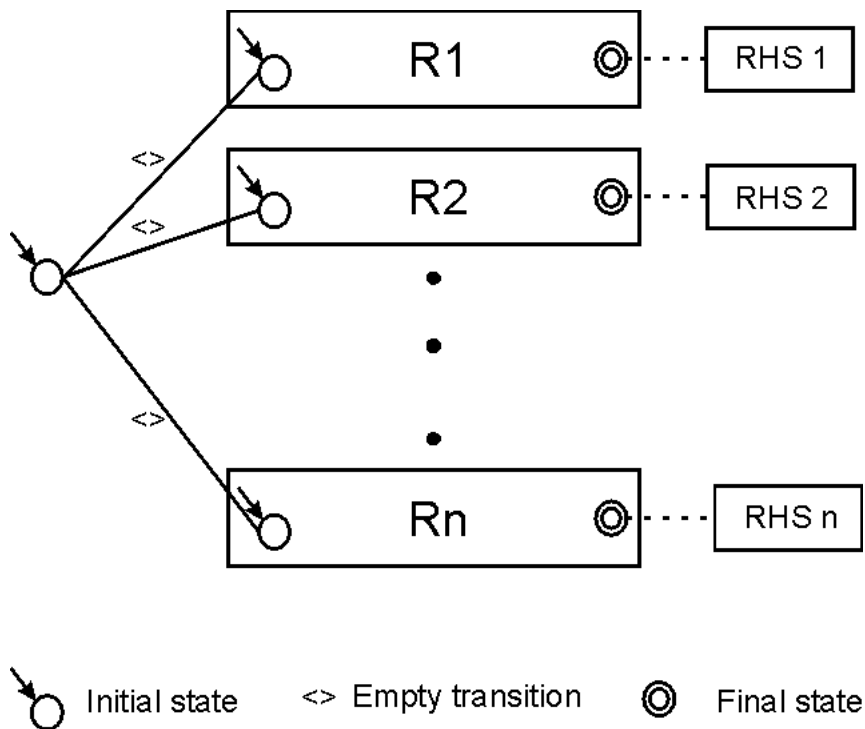


Figure B.2: A nondeterministic FSM

input symbol what is the set of reachable states. The problem is that our input symbols are actually sets of restrictions. This is similar to an automaton that has an infinite set of input symbols (although any given set of rules describes a finite set of constraints). This is not so bad, the real problem is that we have to check if there are transitions that have the same restrictions. We can safely consider that there are no two transitions with the same set of restrictions. This is safe because if this assumption is wrong, the result will be a state that has two transitions starting from it, transitions that consume the same symbol. This is not a problem because we have to check all outgoing transitions anyway; we will only check the same transition twice.

This leads to the next issue. Imagine the next part of the transition graph of a FSM (Fig. B.3):

The restrictions associated to a transition are depicted as graphical figures (the two coloured squares). Now imagine that the two sets of restrictions have a common part (the yellow triangle).

Let us assume that at one moment the current node in the FSM graph (for one of the active FSM instances) is state 1. We get from the annotation graph the set of annotations starting from the associated current node in the annotation graph and try to advance in the FSM transition graph. In order to do this we will have to find a subset of annotations that match the restrictions for moving to state 2 or state 3. In a classical algorithm what we would do

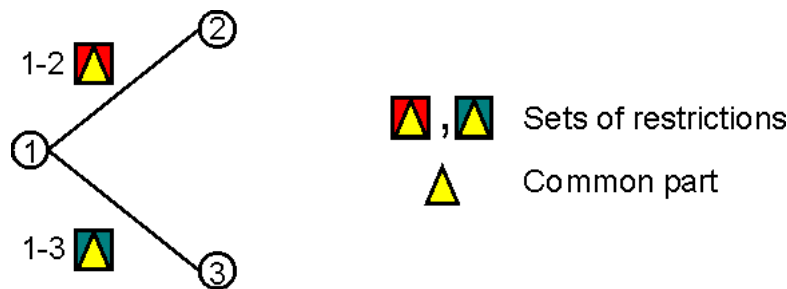


Figure B.3: Example of transitions

is to try to match the annotations against the restrictions “1-2” (this will return a boolean value and a set of bindings) and then we will try the matching against the restrictions “1-3” this means that we will try to match the restrictions in the common part **twice**. Because of the probable structure of the FSM transition graph there will be a lot of transitions starting from the same node which means that may be a lot of conditions checked more than one times.

What can we do to improve this?

We need a way to combine all the restrictions associated to all outgoing arcs of a state (see Fig. B.4).

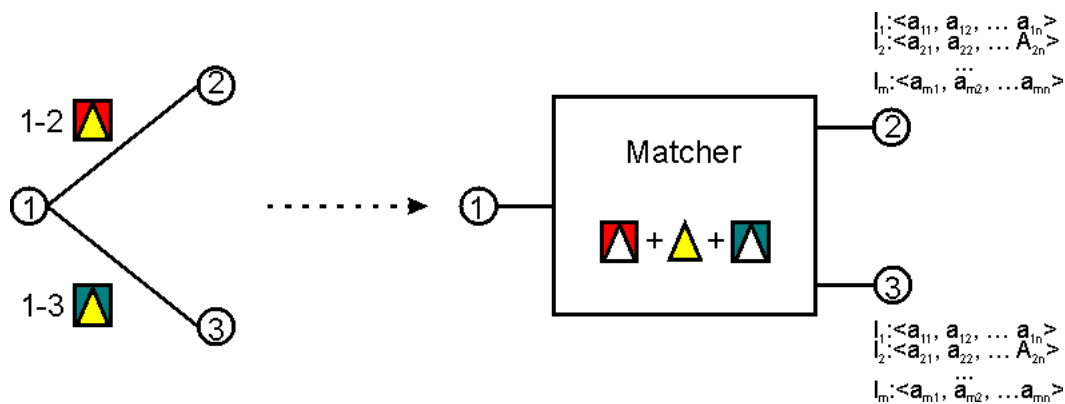


Figure B.4: A combined matching process

One way to do the (combined) matching is to pre-process the DFSM and to convert all transitions to matchers (as in Fig. B.4). This could be done using the following algorithm:

- **Input:** A DFSM;
- **Output:** A DFSM with compound restrictions checks.
- for each state s of the DFSM

1. collect all the restrictions in the labels of the outgoing arcs from s (in the DFSM transition graph)

Note: these restrictions are either of form “Type == t_1 ” or of form “Type == t_1 && Attr $_i$ == Value $_i$ ”
2. Group all these restrictions by type and branch and create compound restrictions of form “[Type == t_1 && Attr $_1$ == Value $_1$ && Attr $_2$ == Value $_2$ && ... && Attr $_n$ == Value $_n$]”

The grouping has to be done with care so it doesn't mix restrictions from different branches, creating unnecessary restrictive queries. These restrictions will be sent to the annotation graph which will do the matching for us. Note that we can only reuse previous queries if the restrictions are identical on two branches.¹

3. Create the data structures necessary for linking the bindings to the results of the queries (see Fig B.5)

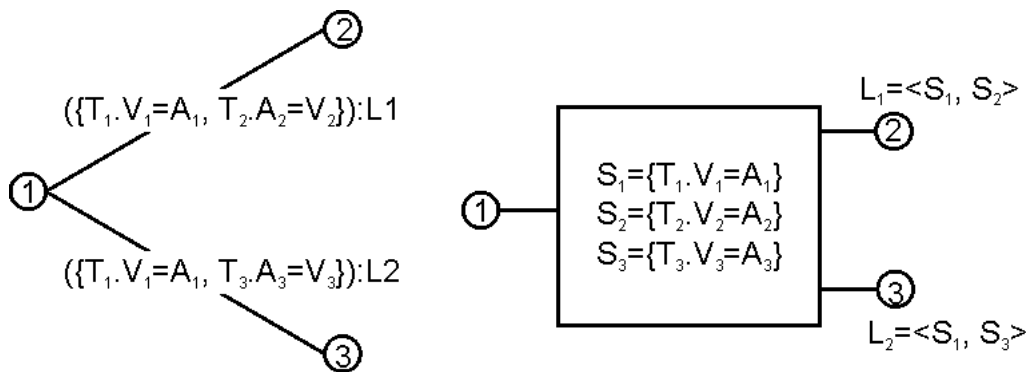


Figure B.5: Building a compound matcher

When this machine will be used for the actual matching the three queries will be run and the results will be stored in sets of annotations ($S_1..S_3$ in the picture) and...

- For each pair of annotations from (A_1, A_2) s.t. A_1 in S_1 & A_2 in S_2
 1. a new DFSM instance will be created;
 2. this instance will move to state 2;
 3. $\langle A_1, A_2 \rangle$ will be bound to L_1
 4. the corresponding node in the annotation graph will become $\max(A_1.\text{endNode}(), A_2.\text{endNode}())$.

¹By this we mean restrictions referring to the same type of annotations. If for branches 1-2 and 1-3 the restrictions for the type T_1 are the same, the query for type T_1 will be run only once. Each of the two branches can also have restrictions for other types of annotations.

- Similarly, for each pair of annotations from (A_1, A_3) s.t. A_1 in S_1 & A_3 in S_3
 1. a new DFSM instance will be created;
 2. this instance will move to state 3;
 3. $\{A_1, A_3\}$ will be bound to L_2
 4. the corresponding node in the annotation graph will become $\max(A_1.\text{endNode}(), A_3.\text{endNode}())$.

While building the compound matcher it is possible to detect queries that depend one from another (e.g. if the expected results of a query are a subset of the results from another query). This kind of situations can be marked so when the queries are actually run some operations can be avoided (e.g. if the less restrictive search returned no results than the more restrictive one can be skipped, or if a search returns an AnnotationSet (an object that can be queried) than the more restrictive query can be).

B.3.2 Algorithm 2

Consider the following figure:

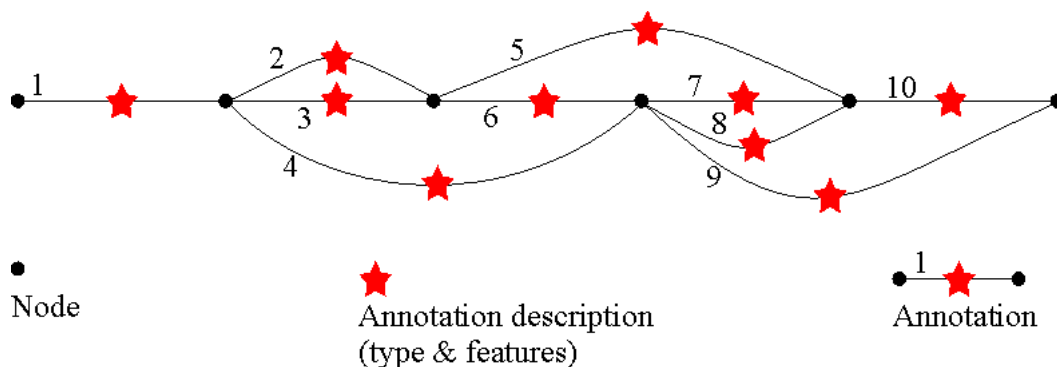


Figure B.6: An annotation graph

Basically, the algorithm has to traverse this graph starting from the leftmost node to the rightmost one. Each path found is a sequence of possible matches.

Because more than one annotation (all starting at the same point) can be matched at one step, a path is not viewed as a classical path in a graph, but a sequence of steps, each step being a set of annotations that start in the same node.

e.g. a path in the graph above can be: $[1].[2,4].[7,8].[10]$;

Note that the next step continues from the rightmost node reached by the annotations in the current step.

The matchings are made by a Finite State Machine that resembles an classical lexical analyser (*aka. scanner*). The main difference from a scanner is that there are no input symbols; the transition from one state to another is based on matching a set of objects (annotations) against a set of restrictions (the constraint group in the LHS of a CPSL rule).

The algorithm can be the following:

1. startNode = the leftmost node
2. create a first instance of the FSM and add it to the list of active instances;
3. for this FSM instance set current node as the leftmost node;
4. while(startNode != last node) do
 - 1 while (not over) do
 - 1 for each F_i active instance of the FSM do
 - 1 if this instance is in a final state then save a clone of it in the set of accepting FSMs (instances of the FSM that have reached a final state);
 - 2 read all the annotations starting from the current node;
 - 3 select all sets of annotation that can be used to advance one step in the transition graph of the FSM;
 - 4 for each such set create a new instance of the FSM, put it in the active list and make it consume the corresponding set of annotations, making any necessary bindings in the process (this new instance will advance in the annotation graph to the rightmost node that is an end of a matched annotation);
 - 5 discard F_i ;
 - 2 end for;
 - 3 if the set of active instances of FSM is empty * then over = true;
 - end while;
 - 2 if the set of accepting FSMs is not empty
 - 1 from all accepting FSMs select ** the one that matched the longest path;if there are more than one for the same path length select the one with highest priority;
 - 2 execute the action associated to the final state of the selected FSM instance;
 - 3 startNode = selectedFSMInstance.getLastNode.getNextNode();
 - 3 else //the matching failed → start over from the next node // startNode = startNode.getNextNode();
5. end while;

**: the set of active FSM instances can decrease when an active instance cannot continue (there is no set of annotations starting from its current node that can be matched). In this case it will be removed from the set.*

***: if we do Brill style matching, we have to process each of the accepting instances.*

B.4 Label Binding Scheme

In TextPro, a “:” label binds to the last matched annotation in its scope. A “+:” label binds to all the annotations matched in the scope. In JAPE there is no “+:” label (though there is a “:+” – see below), due to the ambiguity with Kleene +. In CPSL a constraint group can be both labelled and have a Kleene operator. How can Kleene + followed by label : be distinguished from label +: ? E.g. given `(...)+:label` are the constraints within the brackets having Kleene + applied to them and being labelled, or is it a +: label?

Appelt’s answer is that +: is always a label; to get the other interpretation use `((...)+):`. This may be difficult for rule developers to remember; JAPE disallows the “+:” label, and makes all matched annotations available from every label.

JAPE adds a “:+” label operator, which means that all the spans of any annotations matched are assigned to new annotations created on the RHS relative to that label. (With ordinary “:” labels, only the span of the outermost corners of the annotations matched is used.) (This operator disappears in GATE version 2, with the elimination of multi-span annotations.)

Another problem regards RHS interpretation of unbound labels. If we have something like

```
(
  ( {Word.string == "thing"} ):1
  |
  ( {Word.string == "otherthing"} ):2
)
```

on the LHS, and references to :1 and :2 on the RHS, only one of these will actually be bound to anything when the rule is fired. The expression containing the other should be ignored. In TextPro, an assignment on the RHS that references an unbound label is evaluated to the value “false”. In JAPE, RHS expressions involving unbound operators are not evaluated.

B.5 Classes

The main external interfaces to JAPE are the classes `gate.jape.Batch` and `gate.jape.Compiler`. The CPSL Parser is implemented by `ParseCpsl.jj`, which is input to JavaCC (and JJDoc

to produce grammar documentation) and finally Java itself. (There are lots of other classes produced along the way by the compiler-compiler tools:

```
ASCII_CharStream.java JJTParseCpslState.java Node.java ParseCpsl.java
ParseCpslConstants.java ParseCpslTokenManager.java ParseCpslTreeConstants.java
ParseException.java SimpleNode.java TestJape.java Token.java TokenMgrError.java
```

These live in the parser subpackage, in the `gate/jape/parser` directory.

Each grammar results in an object of class `Transducer`, which has a set of `Rule`.

Constants are held in the interface `JapeConstants`. The test harness is in `TestJape`.

B.6 Implementation

B.6.1 A Walk-Through

The pattern application algorithm (which is either like Doug's, or like Brill's), makes a top-level call to something like

```
boolean matches(int position, Document doc,
                MutableInteger newPosition)
throws PostionOutOfRange
```

which is a method on each `Rule`. This is in turn deferred to the rule's `LeftHandSide`, and thence to the `ConstraintGroup` which each `LeftHandSide` contains. The `ConstraintGroup` iterates over its set of `PatternElementConjunctions`; when one succeeds, the matches call returns true; if none succeed, it returns false. The `Rules` also have

```
void transduce(Document doc) throws LhsNotMatched
```

methods, which may be called after a successful match, and result in the application of the `RightHandSide` of the `Rule` to the document.

`PatternElements` also implement the matches method. Whenever it succeeds, the annotations which were consumed during the match are available from that element, as are a composite span set, and a single span that covers the whole set. In general these will only be accessed via a `bindingName`, which is associated with `ComplexPatternElements`. The `LeftHandSide` maintains a mapping of `bindingNames` to `ComplexPatternElements` (which are accessed by array reference in `Rule RightHandSides`).

Although `PatternElements` give access to an annotation set, these are only built when they are asked for (caching ensures that they are only built once) to avoid storing annotations

against every matched element. When asked for, the construction process is an iterative traversal of the elements contained within the element being asked for the annotations. This traversal always bottoms out into `BasicPatternElements`, which are the only ones that need to store annotations all the time.

In a `RightHandSide` application, then, a call to the `LeftHandSide`'s binding environment will yield a `ComplexPatternElement` representing the bound object, from which annotations and spans can be retrieved as needed.

B.6.2 Example RHS code

Let's imagine we are writing an RHS for a rule which binds a set of annotations representing simple numbers to the label `:numbers`. We want to create a new annotation spanning all the ones matched, whose value is an `Integer` representing the sum of the individual numbers.

The RHS consists of a comma-separated list of blocks, which are either anonymous or labelled. (We also allow the CPSL-style shorthand notation as implemented in `TextPro`. This is more limiting than code, though, e.g. I don't know how you could do the summing operation below in CPSL.) Anonymous blocks will be evaluated within the same scope, which encloses that of all named blocks, and all blocks are evaluated in order, so declarations can be made in anonymous blocks and then referenced in subsequent blocks. Labelled blocks will only be evaluated when they were bound during LHS matching. The symbol `doc` is always scoped to the `Document` which the `Transducer` this rule belongs to is processing. For example:

```
// match a sequence of integers, and store their sum
Rule:  NumberSum

( {Token.kind == "otherNum"} )+ :numberList

-->

:numberList{
  // the running total
  int theSum = 0;

  // loop round all the annotations the LHS consumed
  for(int i = 0; i<numberListAnnots.length(); i++) {

    // get the number string for this annot
    String numberString = doc.spanStrings(numberListAnnots.nth(i));
```

```

    // parse the number string and add to running total
    try {
        theSum += Integer.parseInt(numberString);
    } catch(NumberFormatException e) {
        // ignore badly-formatted numbers
    }
} // for each number annot

doc.addAnnotation(
    "number",
    numberListAnnots.getLeftmostStart(),
    numberListAnnots.getRightmostEnd(),
    "sum",
    new Integer(theSum)
);

} // :numberList

```

This stuff then gets converted into code (that is used to form the class we create for RHSs) looking like this:

```

package japeactionclasses;

import gate.*; import java.io.*; import gate.jape.*;
import gate.util.*; import gate.creole.*;

public class Test2NumberSumActionClass
implements java.io.Serializable, RhsAction {

    public void doit(Document doc, LeftHandSide lhs) {

        AnnotationSet numberListAnnots = lhs.getBoundAnnots("numberList");
        if(numberListAnnots.size() != 0) {
            int theSum = 0;

            for(int i = 0; i<numberListAnnots.length(); i++) {
                String numberString = doc.spanStrings(numberListAnnots.nth(i));

                try {
                    theSum += Integer.parseInt(numberString);
                } catch(NumberFormatException e) { }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```
        doc.addAnnotation(  
            "number",  
            numberListAnnots.getLeftmostStart(),  
            numberListAnnots.getRightmostEnd(),  
            "sum",  
            new Integer(theSum)  
        );  
    }  
}
```

B.7 Compilation

JAPE uses a compiler that translates CPSL grammars to Java objects that target the GATE API (and a regular expression library). It uses a compiler-compiler (JavaCC) to construct the parser for CPSL. Because CPSL is a transducer based on a regular language (in effect an FST) it deploys similar techniques to those used in the lexical analysers of parser generators (e.g. *lex*, *flex*, JavaCC tokenisation rules).

In other words, the JAPE compiler is a compiler generated with the help of a compiler-compiler which uses back-end code similar to that used in compiler-compilers. Confused? If not, welcome to the domain of the nerds, which is where you belong; I'm sure you'll be happy here.

Appendix C

Named-Entity State Machine Patterns

There are, it seems to me, two basic reasons why minds aren't computers... The first... is that human beings are organisms. Because of this we have all sorts of needs - for food, shelter, clothing, sex etc - and capacities - for locomotion, manipulation, articulate speech etc, and so on - to which there are no real analogies in computers. These needs and capacities underlie and interact with our mental activities. This is important, not simply because we can't understand how humans behave except in the light of these needs and capacities, but because any historical explanation of how human mental life developed can only do so by looking at how this process interacted with the evolution of these needs and capacities in successive species of hominids.

...

The second reason... is that... brains don't work like computers.

Minds, Machines and Evolution, Alex Callinicos, 1997 (ISJ 74, p.103).

This chapter describes the individual grammars used in GATE for Named Entity Recognition, and how they are combined together. It relates to the default NE grammar for ANNIE, but should also provide guidelines for those adapting or creating new grammars. For documentation about specific grammars other than this core set, use this document in combination with the comments in the relevant grammar files. chapter 7 also provides information about designing new grammar rules and tips for ensuring maximum processing speed.

C.1 Main.jape

This file contains a list of the grammars to be used, in the correct processing order. The ordering of the grammars is crucial, because they are processed in series, and later grammars

may depend on annotations produced by earlier grammars.

The default grammar consists of the following phases:

- first.jape
- firstname.jape
- name.jape
- name_post.jape
- date_pre.jape
- date.jape
- reldate.jape
- number.jape
- address.jape
- url.jape
- identifier.jape
- jobtitle.jape
- final.jape
- unknown.jape
- name_context.jape
- org_context.jape
- loc_context.jape
- clean.jape

C.2 first.jape

This grammar must always be processed first. It can contain any general macros needed for the whole grammar set. This should consist of a macro defining how space and control characters are to be processed (and may consequently be different for each grammar set, depending on the text type). Because this is defined first of all, it is not necessary to restate this in later grammars. This has a big advantage – it means that default grammars can be used for specialised grammar sets, without having to be adapted to deal with e.g. different

treatment of spaces and control characters. In this way, only the `first.jape` file needs to be changed for each grammar set, rather than every individual grammar.

The `first.jape` grammar also has a dummy rule in. This is never intended to fire – it is simply added because every grammar set must contain rules, but there are no specific rules we wish to add here. Even if the rule were to match the pattern defined, it is designed not to produce any output (due to the empty RHS).

C.3 `firstname.jape`

This grammar contains rules to identify first names and titles via the gazetteer lists. It adds a gender feature where appropriate from the gazetteer list. This gender feature is used later in order to improve co-reference between names and pronouns. The grammar creates separate annotations of type `FirstPerson` and `Title`.

C.4 `name.jape`

This grammar contains initial rules for organization, location and person entities. These rules all create temporary annotations, some of which will be discarded later, but the majority of which will be converted into final annotations in later grammars. Rules beginning with "Not" are negative rules – this means that we detect something and give it a special annotation (or no annotation at all) in order to prevent it being recognised as a name. This is because we have no negative operator (we have "=" but not "!=").

C.4.1 Person

We first define macros for initials, first names, surnames, and endings. We then use these to recognise combinations of first names from the previous phase, and surnames from their POS tags or case information. Persons get marked with the annotation "TempPerson". We also percolate feature information about the gender from the previous annotations if known.

C.4.2 Location

The rules for Location are fairly straightforward, but we define them in this grammar so that any ambiguity can be resolved at the top level. Locations are often combined with other entity types, such as Organisations. This is dealt with by annotating the two entity types separately, and then combining them in a later phase. Locations are recognised mainly by

gazetter lookup, using not only lists of known places, but also key words such as mountain, lake, river, city etc. Locations are annotated as TempLocation in this phase.

C.4.3 Organization

Organizations tend to be defined either by straight lookup from the gazetteer lists, or, for the majority, by a combination of POS or case information and key words such as “company”, “bank”, “Services” “Ltd.” etc. Many organizations are also identified by contextual information in the later phase org_context.jape. In this phase, organizations are annotated as TempOrganization.

C.4.4 Ambiguities

Some ambiguities are resolved immediately in this grammar, while others are left until later phases. For example, a Christian name followed by a possible Location is resolved by default to a person rather than a Location (e.g. “Ken London”). On the other hand, a Christian name followed by a possible organisation ending is resolved to an Organisation (e.g. “Alexandra Pottery”), though this is a slightly less sure rule.

C.4.5 Contextual information

Although most of the rules involving contextual information are invoked in a much later phase, there are a few which are invoked here, such as “X joined Y” where X is annotated as a Person and Y as an Organization. This is so that both annotations types can be handled at once.

C.5 name_post.jape

This grammar runs after the name grammar to fix some erroneous annotations that may have been created. Of course, a more elegant solution would be not to create the problem in the first instance, but this is a workaround. For example, if the surname of a Person contains certain stop words, e.g. ”Mary And” then only the first name should be recognised as a Person. However, it might be that the firstname is also an Organization (and has been tagged with TempOrganization already), e.g. ”U.N.” If this is the case, then the annotation is left untouched, because this is correct.

C.6 date_pre.jape

This grammar precedes the date phase, because it includes extra context to prevent dates being recognised erroneously in the middle of longer expressions. It mainly treats the case where an expression is already tagged as a Person, but could also be tagged as a date (e.g. 16th Jan).

C.7 date.jape

This grammar contains the base rules for recognising times and dates. Given the complexity of potential patterns representing such expressions, there are a large number of rules and macros.

Although times and dates can be mutually ambiguous, we try to distinguish between them as early as possible. Dates, times and years are generally tagged separately (as TempDate, TempTime and TempYear respectively) and then recombined to form a final Date annotation in a later phase. This is because dates, times and years can be combined together in many different ways, and also because there can be much ambiguity between the three. For example, 1312 could be a time or a year, while 9-10 could be a span of time or date, or a fixed time or date.

C.8 reldate.jape

This grammar handles relative rather than absolute date and time sequences, such as “yesterday morning”, “2 hours ago”, “the first 9 months of the financial year” etc. It uses mainly explicit key words such as “ago” and items from the gazetteer lists.

C.9 number.jape

This grammar covers rules concerning money and percentages. The rules are fairly straightforward, using keywords from the gazetteer lists, and there is little ambiguity here, except for example where “Pound” can be money or weight, or where there is no explicit currency denominator.

C.10 address.jape

Rules for Address cover ip addresses, phone and fax numbers, and postal addresses. In general, these are not highly ambiguous, and can be covered with simple pattern matching, although phone numbers can require use of contextual information. Currently only UK formats are really handled, though handling of foreign zipcodes and phone number formats is envisaged in future. The annotations produced are of type Email, Phone etc. and are then replaced in a later phase with final Address annotations with “phone” etc. as features.

C.11 url.jape

Rules for email addresses and Urls are in a separate grammar from the other address types, for the simple reason that SpaceTokens need to be identified for these rules to operate, whereas this is not necessary for the other Address types. For speed of processing, we place them in separate grammars so that SpaceTokens can be eliminated from the Input when they are not required.

C.12 identifier.jape

This grammar identifies “Identifiers” which basically means any combination of numbers and letters acting as an ID, reference number etc. not recognised as any other entity type.

C.13 jobtitle.jape

This grammar simply identifies Jobtitles from the gazetteer lists, and adds a JobTitle annotation, which is used in later phases to aid recognition of other entity types such as Person and Organization. It may then be discarded in the Clean phase if not required as a final annotation type.

C.14 final.jape

This grammar uses the temporary annotations previously assigned in the earlier phases, and converts them into final annotations. The reason for this is that we need to be able to resolve ambiguities between different entity types, so we need to have all the different entity types handled in a single grammar somewhere. Ambiguities can be resolved using prioritisation

techniques. Also, we may need to combine previously annotated elements, such as dates and times, into a single entity.

The rules in this grammar use Java code on the RHS to remove the existing temporary annotations, and replace them with new annotations. This is because we want to retain the features associated with the temporary annotations. For example, we might need to keep track of whether a person is male or female, or whether a location is a city or country. It also enables us to keep track of which rules have been used, for debugging purposes.

For the sake of obfuscation, although this phase is called final, it is not the final phase!

C.15 unknown.jape

This short grammar finds proper nouns not previously recognised, and gives them an Unknown annotation. This is then used by the namematcher – if an Unknown annotation can be matched with a previously categorised entity, its annotation is changed to that of the matched entity. Any remaining Unknown annotations are useful for debugging purposes, and can also be used as input for additional grammars or processing resources.

C.16 name_context.jape

This grammar looks for Unknown annotations occurring in certain contexts which indicate they might belong to Person. This is a typical example of a grammar that would benefit from learning or automatic context generation, because useful contexts are (a) hard to find manually and may require large volumes of training data, and (b) often very domain-specific. In this core grammar, we confine the use of contexts to fairly general uses, since this grammar should not be domain-dependent.

C.17 org_context.jape

This grammar operates on a similar principle to name_context.jape. It is slightly oriented towards business texts, so does not quite fulfil the generality criteria of the previous grammar. It does, however, provide some insight into more detailed use of contexts.*j/pj*

C.18 `loc_context.jape`

This grammar also operates in a similar manner to the preceding two, using general context such as coordinated pairs of locations, and hyponymic types of information.

C.19 `clean.jape`

This grammar comes last of all, and simply aims to clean up (remove) some of the temporary annotations that may not have been deleted along the way.

Appendix D

Part-of-Speech Tags used in the Hepple Tagger

NN – noun - singular or mass
NNP – proper noun - singular
NNPS – proper noun - plural
NNS – noun - plural
NP – proper noun - singular
NPS – proper noun - plural
JJ – adjective
JJR – adjective - comparative
JJS – adjective - superlative
JJSS – -unknown-, but probably a variant of JJS
RB – adverb
RBR – adverb - comparative
RBS – adverb - superlative
VB – verb - base form
VBD – verb - past tense
VBG – verb - gerund or present participle
VBN – verb - past participle
VBP – verb - non-3rd person singular present
VBZ – verb - 3rd person singular present
FW – foreign word
CD – cardinal number
CC – coordinating conjunction
DT – determiner
EX – existential 'there'
IN – preposition or subordinating conjunction
LS – list item marker
MD – modal

PDT – predeterminer
POS – possessive ending
PP – personal pronoun
PRP – -unknown-, but probably possessive pronoun
PRP\$ – -unknown-, but probably possessive pronoun
PRPR\$ – -unknown-, but probably possessive pronoun
RP – particle
TO – literal "to"
UH – interjection
WDT – 'wh'-determiner
WP – 'wh'-pronoun
WP\$ – possessive 'wh'-pronoun
WRB – 'wh'-adverb
SYM – symbol
" – literal double quotes
– literal pound sign
\$ – literal dollar sign
' – literal single quote or apostrophe
(– literal left parenthesis
) – literal right parenthesis
, – literal comma
-- – literal double-dash
-LRB- – -unknown-
. – literal period
:: – literal colon
' – literal grave
STAART – start state marker (used internally)

Appendix E

Sample ML Configuration File

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ML-CONFIG>
  <DATASET>
    <!-- The type of annotation used as instance -->
    <INSTANCE-TYPE>Token</INSTANCE-TYPE>
    <ATTRIBUTE>
      <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
      <NAME>Lookup(0)</NAME>
      <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
      <TYPE>Lookup</TYPE>
      <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
      <POSITION>0</POSITION>
    </ATTRIBUTE>

    <ATTRIBUTE>
      <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
      <NAME>Lookup_MT(-1)</NAME>
      <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
      <TYPE>Lookup</TYPE>
      <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values
      for the attribute -->
      <FEATURE>majorType</FEATURE>

      <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
      <POSITION>-1</POSITION>
      <!-- The list of permitted values.
      if present, marks a nominal attribute;
      if absent, the attribute is numeric (double) -->

```

```
<VALUES>
  <!-- One permitted value -->
  <VALUE>sport</VALUE>
  <VALUE>stop</VALUE>
  <VALUE>organization</VALUE>
  <VALUE>organization_noun</VALUE>
  <VALUE>org_ending</VALUE>
  <VALUE>org_pre</VALUE>
  <VALUE>location</VALUE>
  <VALUE>organization</VALUE>
  <VALUE>country_adj</VALUE>
  <VALUE>currency_unit</VALUE>
  <VALUE>date_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>date_unit</VALUE>
  <VALUE>date</VALUE>
  <VALUE>facility_key_ext</VALUE>
  <VALUE>facility_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>facility</VALUE>
  <VALUE>govern_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>greeting</VALUE>
  <VALUE>time</VALUE>
  <VALUE>ident_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>jobtitle</VALUE>
  <VALUE>loc_general_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>loc_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>cdg</VALUE>
  <VALUE>number</VALUE>
  <VALUE>org_base</VALUE>
  <VALUE>org_key</VALUE>
  <VALUE>spur</VALUE>
  <VALUE>person_first</VALUE>
  <VALUE>person_ending</VALUE>
  <VALUE>person_full</VALUE>
  <VALUE>phone_prefix</VALUE>
  <VALUE>spur_ident</VALUE>
  <VALUE>address</VALUE>
  <VALUE>surname</VALUE>
  <VALUE>time</VALUE>
  <VALUE>time_modifier</VALUE>
  <VALUE>time_unit</VALUE>
  <VALUE>title</VALUE>
  <VALUE>year</VALUE>
</VALUES>
<!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
```

```

    Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

```

```

<ATTRIBUTE>

```

```

    <!-- The name given to the attribute -->

```

```

    <NAME>Lookup_MT(0)</NAME>

```

```

    <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->

```

```

    <TYPE>Lookup</TYPE>

```

```

    <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values
    for the attribute -->

```

```

    <FEATURE>majorType</FEATURE>

```

```

    <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->

```

```

    <POSITION>0</POSITION>

```

```

    <!-- The list of permitted values.

```

```

    if present, marks a nominal attribute;

```

```

    if absent, the attribute is numeric (double)      -->

```

```

    <VALUES>

```

```

        <!-- One permitted value -->

```

```

        <VALUE>sport</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>stop</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>organization</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>organization_noun</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>org_ending</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>org_pre</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>location</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>organization</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>country_adj</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>currency_unit</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>date_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>date_unit</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>date</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>facility_key_ext</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>facility_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>facility</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>govern_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>greeting</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>time</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>ident_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>jobtitle</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>loc_general_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>loc_key</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>cdg</VALUE>

```

```

        <VALUE>number</VALUE>

```

```

    <VALUE>org_base</VALUE>
    <VALUE>org_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>spur</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_first</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_ending</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_full</VALUE>
    <VALUE>phone_prefix</VALUE>
    <VALUE>spur_ident</VALUE>
    <VALUE>address</VALUE>
    <VALUE>surname</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time_modifier</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time_unit</VALUE>
    <VALUE>title</VALUE>
    <VALUE>year</VALUE>
  </VALUES>
  <!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
  Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

<ATTRIBUTE>
  <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
  <NAME>Lookup_MT(1)</NAME>
  <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
  <TYPE>Lookup</TYPE>
  <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values
  for the attribute -->
  <FEATURE>majorType</FEATURE>

  <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
  <POSITION>1</POSITION>

  <!-- The list of permitted values.
  if present, marks a nominal attribute;
  if absent, the attribute is numeric (double) -->
  <VALUES>
    <!-- One permitted value -->
    <VALUE>sport</VALUE>
    <VALUE>stop</VALUE>
    <VALUE>organization</VALUE>
    <VALUE>organization_noun</VALUE>
    <VALUE>org_ending</VALUE>
    <VALUE>org_pre</VALUE>
    <VALUE>location</VALUE>
  </VALUES>

```

```

    <VALUE>organization</VALUE>
    <VALUE>country_adj</VALUE>
    <VALUE>currency_unit</VALUE>
    <VALUE>date_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>date_unit</VALUE>
    <VALUE>date</VALUE>
    <VALUE>facility_key_ext</VALUE>
    <VALUE>facility_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>facility</VALUE>
    <VALUE>govern_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>greeting</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time</VALUE>
    <VALUE>ident_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>jobtitle</VALUE>
    <VALUE>loc_general_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>loc_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>cdg</VALUE>
    <VALUE>number</VALUE>
    <VALUE>org_base</VALUE>
    <VALUE>org_key</VALUE>
    <VALUE>spur</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_first</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_ending</VALUE>
    <VALUE>person_full</VALUE>
    <VALUE>phone_prefix</VALUE>
    <VALUE>spur_ident</VALUE>
    <VALUE>address</VALUE>
    <VALUE>surname</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time_modifier</VALUE>
    <VALUE>time_unit</VALUE>
    <VALUE>title</VALUE>
    <VALUE>year</VALUE>
</VALUES>
<!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

<ATTRIBUTE>
  <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
  <NAME>POS_category(-1)</NAME>
  <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
  <TYPE>Token</TYPE>
  <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values

```

```
for the attribute -->
<FEATURE>category</FEATURE>

<!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
<POSITION>-1</POSITION>

<!-- The list of permitted values.
if present, marks a nominal attribute;
if absent, the attribute is numeric (double) -->
<VALUES>
  <!-- One permitted value -->
    <VALUE>NN</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNPS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NPS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJ</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJR</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJSS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>RB</VALUE>
    <VALUE>RBR</VALUE>
    <VALUE>RBS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VB</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VBD</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VBG</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VBN</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VBP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>VBZ</VALUE>
    <VALUE>FW</VALUE>
    <VALUE>CD</VALUE>
    <VALUE>CC</VALUE>
    <VALUE>DT</VALUE>
    <VALUE>EX</VALUE>
    <VALUE>IN</VALUE>
    <VALUE>LS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>MD</VALUE>
    <VALUE>PDT</VALUE>
    <VALUE>POS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>PP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>PRP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>PRP$</VALUE>
    <VALUE>PRPR$</VALUE>
```



```

    <VALUE>RP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>TO</VALUE>
    <VALUE>UH</VALUE>
    <VALUE>WDT</VALUE>
    <VALUE>WP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>WP$</VALUE>
    <VALUE>WRB</VALUE>
    <VALUE>SYM</VALUE>
    <VALUE>\"</VALUE>
    <VALUE>#</VALUE>
    <VALUE>$</VALUE>
    <VALUE>'</VALUE>
    <VALUE>(</VALUE>
    <VALUE>)</VALUE>
    <VALUE>,</VALUE>
    <VALUE>--</VALUE>
    <VALUE>-LRB-</VALUE>
    <VALUE>.</VALUE>
    <VALUE>' '</VALUE>
    <VALUE>:</VALUE>
    <VALUE>::</VALUE>
    <VALUE>'</VALUE>
</VALUES>
<!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

<ATTRIBUTE>
  <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
  <NAME>POS_category(0)</NAME>
  <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
  <TYPE>Token</TYPE>
  <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values
for the attribute -->
  <FEATURE>category</FEATURE>

  <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
  <POSITION>0</POSITION>

  <!-- The list of permitted values.
if present, marks a nominal attribute;
if absent, the attribute is numeric (double)      -->
  <VALUES>
    <!-- One permitted value -->

```

<VALUE>NN</VALUE>
<VALUE>NNP</VALUE>
<VALUE>NNPS</VALUE>
<VALUE>NNS</VALUE>
<VALUE>NP</VALUE>
<VALUE>NPS</VALUE>
<VALUE>JJ</VALUE>
<VALUE>JJR</VALUE>
<VALUE>JJS</VALUE>
<VALUE>JJSS</VALUE>
<VALUE>RB</VALUE>
<VALUE>RBR</VALUE>
<VALUE>RBS</VALUE>
<VALUE>VB</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBD</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBG</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBN</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBP</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBZ</VALUE>
<VALUE>FW</VALUE>
<VALUE>CD</VALUE>
<VALUE>CC</VALUE>
<VALUE>DT</VALUE>
<VALUE>EX</VALUE>
<VALUE>IN</VALUE>
<VALUE>LS</VALUE>
<VALUE>MD</VALUE>
<VALUE>PDT</VALUE>
<VALUE>POS</VALUE>
<VALUE>PP</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRP</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRP\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRPR\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>RP</VALUE>
<VALUE>TO</VALUE>
<VALUE>UH</VALUE>
<VALUE>WDT</VALUE>
<VALUE>WP</VALUE>
<VALUE>WP\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>WRB</VALUE>
<VALUE>SYM</VALUE>
<VALUE>\ "</VALUE>
<VALUE>#</VALUE>
<VALUE>\$</VALUE>

```

    <VALUE>'</VALUE>
    <VALUE>(</VALUE>
    <VALUE>)</VALUE>
    <VALUE>,</VALUE>
    <VALUE>--</VALUE>
    <VALUE>-LRB-</VALUE>
    <VALUE>.</VALUE>
    <VALUE>' '</VALUE>
    <VALUE>:</VALUE>
    <VALUE>::</VALUE>
    <VALUE>'</VALUE>
</VALUES>
<!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

<ATTRIBUTE>
  <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
  <NAME>POS_category(1)</NAME>
  <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
  <TYPE>Token</TYPE>
  <!-- Optional: the feature name for the feature used to extract values
for the attribute -->
  <FEATURE>category</FEATURE>

  <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
  <POSITION>1</POSITION>

  <!-- The list of permitted values.
if present, marks a nominal attribute;
if absent, the attribute is numeric (double) -->
  <VALUES>
    <!-- One permitted value -->
    <VALUE>NN</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNPS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NNS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NP</VALUE>
    <VALUE>NPS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJ</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJR</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>JJSS</VALUE>
    <VALUE>RB</VALUE>

```

<VALUE>RBR</VALUE>
<VALUE>RBS</VALUE>
<VALUE>VB</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBD</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBG</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBN</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBP</VALUE>
<VALUE>VBZ</VALUE>
<VALUE>FW</VALUE>
<VALUE>CD</VALUE>
<VALUE>CC</VALUE>
<VALUE>DT</VALUE>
<VALUE>EX</VALUE>
<VALUE>IN</VALUE>
<VALUE>LS</VALUE>
<VALUE>MD</VALUE>
<VALUE>PDT</VALUE>
<VALUE>POS</VALUE>
<VALUE>PP</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRP</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRP\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>PRPR\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>RP</VALUE>
<VALUE>TO</VALUE>
<VALUE>UH</VALUE>
<VALUE>WDT</VALUE>
<VALUE>WP</VALUE>
<VALUE>WP\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>WRB</VALUE>
<VALUE>SYM</VALUE>
<VALUE>\ "</VALUE>
<VALUE>#</VALUE>
<VALUE>\$</VALUE>
<VALUE>'</VALUE>
<VALUE>(</VALUE>
<VALUE>)</VALUE>
<VALUE>,</VALUE>
<VALUE>--</VALUE>
<VALUE>-LRB-</VALUE>
<VALUE>.</VALUE>
<VALUE>' '</VALUE>
<VALUE>:</VALUE>
<VALUE>:</VALUE>
<VALUE>'</VALUE>

```
</VALUES>
<!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

<ATTRIBUTE>
  <!-- The name given to the attribute -->
  <NAME>Entity(0)</NAME>
  <!-- The type of annotation used as attribute -->
  <TYPE>Entity</TYPE>
  <!-- The position relative to the instance annotation -->
  <POSITION>0</POSITION>

  <CLASS/>
  <!-- Optional: if present marks the attribute used as CLASS
Only one attribute can be marked as class -->
</ATTRIBUTE>

</DATASET>

<ENGINE>
  <WRAPPER>gate.creole.ml.weka.Wrapper</WRAPPER>
  <OPTIONS>
    <CLASSIFIER>weka.classifiers.j48.J48</CLASSIFIER>
  <!--      <CLASSIFIER-OPTIONS>-K 3</CLASSIFIER-OPTIONS> -->
    <CONFIDENCE-THRESHOLD>0.85</CONFIDENCE-THRESHOLD>
  </OPTIONS>
</ENGINE>
</ML-CONFIG>
```

References

[Appelt 99]

D. Appelt. An Introduction to Information Extraction. *Artificial Intelligence Communications*, 12(3):161–172, 1999.

[Azar 89]

S. Azar. *Understanding and Using English Grammar*. Prentice Hall Regents, 1989.

[Baker *et al.* 02]

P. Baker, A. Hardie, T. McEnery, H. Cunningham, and R. Gaizauskas. EMILLE, A 67-Million Word Corpus of Indic Languages: Data Collection, Mark-up and Harmonisation. In *Proceedings of 3rd Language Resources and Evaluation Conference (LREC'2002)*, pages 819–825, 2002.

[Bechhofer *et al.* 03]

S. Bechhofer, F. van Harmelen, J. Hendler, I. Horrocks, D. L. McGuinness, P. F. Patel-Schneider, and L. A. Stein. OWL Web Ontology Language Reference. Technical report, W3C Proposed Recommendation 15 December 2003, <http://www.w3.org/TR/2003/PR-owl-ref-20031215/>, 2003.

[Bird & Liberman 99]

S. Bird and M. Liberman. A Formal Framework for Linguistic Annotation. Technical Report MS-CIS-99-01, Department of Computer and Information Science, University of Pennsylvania, 1999. <http://xxx.lanl.gov/abs/cs.CL/9903003>.

[Bontcheva *et al.* 00]

K. Bontcheva, H. Brugman, A. Russel, P. Wittenburg, and H. Cunningham. An Experiment in Unifying Audio-Visual and Textual Infrastructures for Language Processing R&D. In *Proceedings of the Workshop on Using Toolsets and Architectures To Build NLP Systems at COLING-2000*, Luxembourg, 2000. <http://gate.ac.uk/>.

[Bontcheva *et al.* 02a]

K. Bontcheva, H. Cunningham, V. Tablan, D. Maynard, and O. Hamza. Using GATE as an Environment for Teaching NLP. In *Proceedings of the ACL Workshop on Effective Tools and Methodologies in Teaching NLP*, 2002.

[Bontcheva *et al.* 02b]

K. Bontcheva, H. Cunningham, V. Tablan, D. Maynard, and H. Saggion. Developing

- Reusable and Robust Language Processing Components for Information Systems using GATE. In *Proceedings of the 3rd International Workshop on Natural Language and Information Systems (NLIS'2002)*, Aix-en-Provence, France, 2002. IEEE Computer Society Press.
- [Bontcheva *et al.* 02c]
K. Bontcheva, M. Dimitrov, D. Maynard, V. Tablan, and H. Cunningham. Shallow Methods for Named Entity Coreference Resolution. In *Chaînes de références et résolveurs d'anaphores, workshop TALN 2002*, Nancy, France, 2002.
- [Booch 94]
G. Booch. *Object-Oriented Analysis and Design 2nd Edn.* Benjamin/Cummings, 1994.
- [Brugman *et al.* 99]
H. Brugman, K. Bontcheva, P. Wittenburg, and H. Cunningham. Integrating Multimedia and Textual Software Architectures for Language Technology. Technical report MPI-TG-99-1, Max-Planck Institute for Psycholinguistics, Nijmegen, Netherlands, 1999.
- [Campione *et al.* 98]
M. Campione, K. Walrath, A. Huml, and the Tutuorial Team. *The Java Tutorial Continued: The Rest of the JDK.* Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1998.
- [Chinchor 92]
N. Chinchor. Muc-4 evaluation metrics. In *Proceedings of the Fourth Message Understanding Conference*, pages 22–29, 1992.
- [Cobuild 99]
C. Cobuild, editor. *English Grammar.* Harper Collins, 1999.
- [Cowie & Lehnert 96]
J. Cowie and W. Lehnert. Information Extraction. *Communications of the ACM*, 39(1):80–91, 1996.
- [Cunningham 94]
H. Cunningham. Support Software for Language Engineering Research. Technical Report 94/05, Centre for Computational Linguistics, UMIST, Manchester, 1994.
- [Cunningham 99a]
H. Cunningham. A Definition and Short History of Language Engineering. *Journal of Natural Language Engineering*, 5(1):1–16, 1999.
- [Cunningham 99b]
H. Cunningham. Information Extraction: a User Guide (revised version). Research Memorandum CS-99-07, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, May 1999.

- [Cunningham 99c]
H. Cunningham. JAPE: a Java Annotation Patterns Engine. Research Memorandum CS-99-06, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, May 1999.
- [Cunningham 00]
H. Cunningham. *Software Architecture for Language Engineering*. Unpublished PhD thesis, University of Sheffield, 2000. <http://gate.ac.uk/sale/thesis/>.
- [Cunningham 02]
H. Cunningham. GATE, a General Architecture for Text Engineering. *Computers and the Humanities*, 36:223–254, 2002.
- [Cunningham et al. 94]
H. Cunningham, M. Freeman, and W. Black. Software Reuse, Object-Oriented Frameworks and Natural Language Processing. In *New Methods in Language Processing (NeMLaP-1)*, September 1994, Manchester, 1994. (Re-published in book form 1997 by UCL Press).
- [Cunningham et al. 95]
H. Cunningham, R. Gaizauskas, and Y. Wilks. A General Architecture for Text Engineering (GATE) – a new approach to Language Engineering R&D. Technical Report CS-95-21, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, 1995. <http://xxx.lanl.gov/abs/cs.CL/9601009>.
- [Cunningham et al. 96a]
H. Cunningham, K. Humphreys, R. Gaizauskas, and M. Stower. CREOLE Developer’s Manual. Technical report, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, 1996. <http://www.dcs.shef.ac.uk/nlp/gate>.
- [Cunningham et al. 96b]
H. Cunningham, K. Humphreys, R. Gaizauskas, and Y. Wilks. TIPSTER-Compatible Projects at Sheffield. In *Advances in Text Processing, TIPSTER Program Phase II*. DARPA, Morgan Kaufmann, California, 1996.
- [Cunningham et al. 96c]
H. Cunningham, Y. Wilks, and R. Gaizauskas. GATE – a General Architecture for Text Engineering. In *Proceedings of the 16th Conference on Computational Linguistics (COLING-96)*, Copenhagen, August 1996.
- [Cunningham et al. 96d]
H. Cunningham, Y. Wilks, and R. Gaizauskas. Software Infrastructure for Language Engineering. In *Proceedings of the AISB Workshop on Language Engineering for Document Analysis and Recognition*, Brighton, U.K., April 1996.
- [Cunningham et al. 96e]
H. Cunningham, Y. Wilks, and R. Gaizauskas. New Methods, Current Trends and Software Infrastructure for NLP. In *Proceedings of the Conference on New Methods*

- in Natural Language Processing (NeMLaP-2)*, Bilkent University, Turkey, September 1996. <http://xxx.lanl.gov/abs/cs.CL/9607025>.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 97a]
H. Cunningham, K. Humphreys, R. Gaizauskas, and Y. Wilks. GATE – a TIPSTER-based General Architecture for Text Engineering. In *Proceedings of the TIPSTER Text Program (Phase III) 6 Month Workshop*. DARPA, Morgan Kaufmann, California, May 1997.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 97b]
H. Cunningham, K. Humphreys, R. Gaizauskas, and Y. Wilks. Software Infrastructure for Natural Language Processing. In *Proceedings of the 5th Conference on Applied Natural Language Processing (ANLP-97)*, March 1997. <http://xxx.lanl.gov/abs/cs.CL/9702005>.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 98a]
H. Cunningham, W. Peters, C. McCauley, K. Bontcheva, and Y. Wilks. A Level Playing Field for Language Resource Evaluation. In *Workshop on Distributing and Accessing Lexical Resources at Conference on Language Resources Evaluation, Granada, Spain*, 1998.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 98b]
H. Cunningham, M. Stevenson, and Y. Wilks. Implementing a Sense Tagger within a General Architecture for Language Engineering. In *Proceedings of the Third Conference on New Methods in Language Engineering (NeMLaP-3)*, pages 59–72, Sydney, Australia, 1998.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 99]
H. Cunningham, R. Gaizauskas, K. Humphreys, and Y. Wilks. Experience with a Language Engineering Architecture: Three Years of GATE. In *Proceedings of the AISB'99 Workshop on Reference Architectures and Data Standards for NLP*, Edinburgh, April 1999. The Society for the Study of Artificial Intelligence and Simulation of Behaviour.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 00a]
H. Cunningham, K. Bontcheva, W. Peters, and Y. Wilks. Uniform language resource access and distribution in the context of a General Architecture for Text Engineering (GATE). In *Proceedings of the Workshop on Ontologies and Language Resources (OntoLex'2000)*, Sozopol, Bulgaria, September 2000. <http://gate.ac.uk/sale/ontolex/ontolex.ps>.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 00b]
H. Cunningham, K. Bontcheva, V. Tablan, and Y. Wilks. Software Infrastructure for Language Resources: a Taxonomy of Previous Work and a Requirements Analysis. In *Proceedings of the 2nd International Conference on Language Resources and Evaluation (LREC-2)*, Athens, 2000. <http://gate.ac.uk/>.

- [Cunningham *et al.* 00c]
H. Cunningham, D. Maynard, K. Bontcheva, V. Tablan, and Y. Wilks. Experience of using GATE for NLP R&D. In *Proceedings of the Workshop on Using Toolsets and Architectures To Build NLP Systems at COLING-2000*, Luxembourg, 2000. <http://gate.ac.uk/>.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 00d]
H. Cunningham, D. Maynard, and V. Tablan. JAPE: a Java Annotation Patterns Engine (Second Edition). Research Memorandum CS-00-10, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, November 2000.
- [Cunningham *et al.* 02]
H. Cunningham, D. Maynard, K. Bontcheva, and V. Tablan. GATE: A Framework and Graphical Development Environment for Robust NLP Tools and Applications. In *Proceedings of the 40th Anniversary Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics (ACL'02)*, 2002.
- [Dimitrov 02a]
M. Dimitrov. *A Light-weight Approach to Coreference Resolution for Named Entities in Text*. MSc Thesis, University of Sofia, Bulgaria, 2002. <http://www.ontotext.com/ie/thesis-m.pdf>.
- [Dimitrov 02b]
M. Dimitrov. *A Light-weight Approach to Coreference Resolution for Named Entities in Text*. MSc Thesis, University of Sofia, Bulgaria, 2002. <http://www.ontotext.com/ie/thesis-m.pdf>.
- [Frakes & Baeza-Yates 92]
W. Frakes and R. Baeza-Yates, editors. *Information retrieval, data structures and algorithms*. Prentice Hall, New York, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1992.
- [Gaizauskas & Wilks 98]
R. Gaizauskas and Y. Wilks. Information Extraction: Beyond Document Retrieval. *Journal of Documentation*, 54(1):70–105, 1998.
- [Gaizauskas *et al.* 96a]
R. Gaizauskas, P. Rodgers, H. Cunningham, and K. Humphreys. GATE User Guide. <http://www.dcs.shef.ac.uk/nlp/gate>, 1996.
- [Gaizauskas *et al.* 96b]
R. Gaizauskas, H. Cunningham, Y. Wilks, P. Rodgers, and K. Humphreys. GATE – an Environment to Support Research and Development in Natural Language Engineering. In *Proceedings of the 8th IEEE International Conference on Tools with Artificial Intelligence (ICTAI-96)*, Toulouse, France, October 1996.
- [Gambäck & Olsson 00]
B. Gambäck and F. Olsson. Experiences of Language Engineering Algorithm Reuse.

- In *Second International Conference on Language Resources and Evaluation (LREC)*, pages 155–160, Athens, Greece, 2000.
- [Gazdar & Mellish 89]
G. Gazdar and C. Mellish. *Natural Language Processing in Prolog*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1989.
- [Grishman 97]
R. Grishman. TIPSTER Architecture Design Document Version 2.3. Technical report, DARPA, 1997. http://www.itl.nist.gov/div894/894.02/related_projects/-tipster/.
- [Hepple 00]
M. Hepple. Independence and commitment: Assumptions for rapid training and execution of rule-based POS taggers. In *Proceedings of the 38th Annual Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics (ACL-2000)*, Hong Kong, October 2000.
- [Horrocks & vanHarmelen 01]
I. Horrocks and F. van Harmelen. Reference Description of the DAML+OIL (March 2001) Ontology Markup Language. Technical report, 2001. <http://www.daml.org/2001/03/reference.html>.
- [Humphreys *et al.* 96]
K. Humphreys, R. Gaizauskas, H. Cunningham, and S. Azzam. CREOLE Module Specifications. <http://www.dcs.shef.ac.uk/nlp/gate/>, 1996.
- [Jackson 75]
M. Jackson. *Principles of Program Design*. Academic Press, London, 1975.
- [Lassila & Swick 99]
O. Lassila and R. Swick. Resource Description Framework (RDF) Model and Syntax Specification. Technical Report 19990222, W3C Consortium, <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-rdf-syntax/>, 1999.
- [LREC-1 98]
Conference on Language Resources Evaluation (LREC-1), Granada, Spain, 1998.
- [LREC-2 00]
Second Conference on Language Resources Evaluation (LREC-2), Athens, 2000.
- [Manning & Schütze 99]
C. Manning and H. Schütze. *Foundations of Statistical Natural Language Processing*. MIT press, Cambridge, MA, 1999. Supporting materials available at <http://www.sultry.arts.usyd.edu.au/fsnlp/>.

- [Maynard *et al.* 00]
D. Maynard, H. Cunningham, K. Bontcheva, R. Catizone, G. Demetriou, R. Gaizauskas, O. Hamza, M. Hepple, P. Herring, B. Mitchell, M. Oakes, W. Peters, A. Setzer, M. Stevenson, V. Tablan, C. Ursu, and Y. Wilks. A Survey of Uses of GATE. Technical Report CS-00-06, Department of Computer Science, University of Sheffield, 2000.
- [Maynard *et al.* 01]
D. Maynard, V. Tablan, C. Ursu, H. Cunningham, and Y. Wilks. Named Entity Recognition from Diverse Text Types. In *Recent Advances in Natural Language Processing 2001 Conference*, pages 257–274, Tzigov Chark, Bulgaria, 2001.
- [Maynard *et al.* 02a]
D. Maynard, K. Bontcheva, H. Saggion, H. Cunningham, and O. Hamza. Using a Text Engineering Framework to Build an Extendable and Portable IE-based Summarisation System. In *Proceedings of the ACL Workshop on Text Summarisation*, 2002.
- [Maynard *et al.* 02b]
D. Maynard, H. Cunningham, K. Bontcheva, and M. Dimitrov. Adapting A Robust Multi-Genre NE System for Automatic Content Extraction. In *Proceedings of the Tenth International Conference on Artificial Intelligence: Methodology, Systems, Applications (AIMSA 2002)*, 2002.
- [Maynard *et al.* 02c]
D. Maynard, H. Cunningham, and R. Gaizauskas. Named entity recognition at sheffield university. In H. Holmboe, editor, *Nordic Language Technology – Arbog for Nordisk Sprogteknologisk Forskningsprogram 2002-2004*, pages 141–145. Museum Tusulanums Forlag, 2002.
- [Maynard *et al.* 02d]
D. Maynard, V. Tablan, H. Cunningham, C. Ursu, H. Saggion, K. Bontcheva, and Y. Wilks. Architectural Elements of Language Engineering Robustness. *Journal of Natural Language Engineering – Special Issue on Robust Methods in Analysis of Natural Language Data*, 8(2/3):257–274, 2002.
- [McEnery *et al.* 00]
A. McEnery, P. Baker, R. Gaizauskas, and H. Cunningham. EMILLE: Building a Corpus of South Asian Languages. *Vivek, A Quarterly in Artificial Intelligence*, 13(3):23–32, 2000.
- [Pastra *et al.* 02]
K. Pastra, D. Maynard, H. Cunningham, O. Hamza, and Y. Wilks. How feasible is the reuse of grammars for named entity recognition? In *Proceedings of the 3rd Language Resources and Evaluation Conference*, 2002.

[Peters *et al.* 98]

W. Peters, H. Cunningham, C. McCauley, K. Bontcheva, and Y. Wilks. Uniform Language Resource Access and Distribution. In *Workshop on Distributing and Accessing Lexical Resources at Conference on Language Resources Evaluation*, Granada, Spain, 1998.

[Saggion *et al.* 02a]

H. Saggion, H. Cunningham, K. Bontcheva, D. Maynard, C. Ursu, O. Hamza, and Y. Wilks. Access to Multimedia Information through Multisource and Multilanguage Information Extraction. In *Proceedings of the 7th Workshop on Applications of Natural Language to Information Systems (NLDB 2002)*, Stockholm, Sweden, 2002.

[Saggion *et al.* 02b]

H. Saggion, H. Cunningham, D. Maynard, K. Bontcheva, O. Hamza, C. Ursu, and Y. Wilks. Extracting Information for Information Indexing of Multimedia Material. In *Proceedings of 3rd Language Resources and Evaluation Conference (LREC'2002)*, 2002.

[Shaw & Garlan 96]

M. Shaw and D. Garlan. *Software Architecture*. Prentice Hall, New York, 1996.

[Stevenson *et al.* 98]

M. Stevenson, H. Cunningham, and Y. Wilks. Sense tagging and language engineering. In *Proceedings of the 13th European Conference on Artificial Intelligence (ECAI-98)*, pages 185–189, Brighton, U.K., 1998.

[Tablan *et al.* 02]

V. Tablan, C. Ursu, K. Bontcheva, H. Cunningham, D. Maynard, O. Hamza, T. McEnery, P. Baker, and M. Leisher. A Unicode-based Environment for Creation and Use of Language Resources. In *3rd Language Resources and Evaluation Conference*, 2002.

[Unicode Consortium 96]

Unicode Consortium. *The Unicode Standard, Version 2.0*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1996.

[van Rijsbergen 79]

C. van Rijsbergen. *Information Retrieval*. Butterworths, London, 1979.

[Yourdon 89]

E. Yourdon. *Modern Structured Analysis*. Prentice Hall, New York, 1989.

[Yourdon 96]

E. Yourdon. *The Rise and Resurrection of the American Programmer*. Prentice Hall, New York, 1996.

Colophon

Formal semantics (henceforth FS), at least as it relates to computational language understanding, is in one way rather like connectionism, though without the crucial prop Sejnowski's work (1986) is widely believed to give to the latter: both are old doctrines returned, like the Bourbons, having learned nothing and forgotten nothing. But FS has nothing to show as a showpiece of success after all the intellectual groaning and effort.

On Keeping Logic in its Place (in *Theoretical Issues in Natural Language Processing*, ed. Wilks), Yorick Wilks, 1989 (p.130).

We wanted to be modern, we wanted to make the XML people feel like progress is indeed happening, we wanted to update our CVs with the latest trick.... So we looked into using XML as source for this document, and using something like DocBook to translate it into the PDF and HTML versions that we wanted to provide for printing and web viewing. Nice ideas, but our conclusion was that they're not really ready right now. So in the end it was good old L^AT_EX and TeX4HT for the HTML production. Thank you Don Knuth, Leslie Lamport and Eitan Gurari.